

Hippocrates'
On AIRS,
WATERS,
and PLACES
&
The
Hippocratic Oath

AN INTERMEDIATE
GREEK READER

Evan Hayes
and Stephen Nimis

Hippocrates'

*On Airs, Waters, and
Places
and The Hippocratic Oath*

An Intermediate Greek Reader

Greek text with running vocabulary and commentary

Evan Hayes
and
Stephen Nimis

Hippocrates' *On Airs, Waters, and Places* and *The Hippocratic Oath*: An Intermediate Greek Reader: Greek text with Running Vocabulary and Commentary

First Edition

© 2013 by Evan Hayes and Stephen Nimis

All rights reserved. Subject to the exception immediately following, this book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form (beyond copying permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the U.S. Copyright Law and except by reviewers for the public press), without written permission from the publisher.

The authors have made a version of this work available (via email) under a Creative Commons Attribution-Noncommercial-Share Alike 3.0 License. The terms of the license can be accessed at creativecommons.org.

Accordingly, you are free to copy, alter and distribute this work under the following conditions:

1. You must attribute the work to the author (but not in a way that suggests that the author endorses your alterations to the work).
2. You may not use this work for commercial purposes.
3. If you alter, transform or build up this work, you may distribute the resulting work only under the same or similar license as this one.

Unless otherwise noted, all images appearing in this edition are in the public domain.

ISBN-10: 0983222851

ISBN-13: 978-0-9832228-5-9

Published by Faenum Publishing, Ltd.

Cover Design: Evan Hayes

Fonts: Gentium (Open Font License)
GFS Porson (Open Font License)

nimissa@miamioh.edu

hayesee@miamioh.edu

Table of Contents

Introduction	ix-xii
The Language of <i>Airs, Waters, and Places</i>	xv-xviii
Abbreviations	xix
<i>On Airs, Waters, and Places</i> : Text and Commentary	1-101
Grammatical topics:	
Accusative + Infinitive Constructions.....	4
The Different Meanings of <i>αὐτὸς</i>	9
Agency and Means.....	11
Third Declension Nouns.....	12
General or Indefinite Clauses.....	15
The Different Meanings of <i>ἔχω</i>	16
-εὔ- for -εο- in Present Participles.....	19
Superlative and Comparative Adjectives.....	27
Neuter Adjectives for Abstract Nouns.....	37
Result Clauses.....	50
Expressions of Specification and Respect.....	55
Special topics:	
Directions in Hippocrates.....	14
Hippocrates' Medical Calendar.....	55-56
The World of <i>Airs, Waters, and Places</i>	60-62
<i>The Hippocratic Oath</i> : Text and Commentary	103-108
Medical Glossary	111-115
List of Verbs	117-125
Glossary	127-136

Acknowledgments

The idea for this project grew out of work that we, the authors, did with support from Miami University's Undergraduate Summer Scholars Program, for which we thank Martha Weber and the Office of Advanced Research and Scholarship. The Miami University College of Arts and Science's Dean's Scholar Program allowed us to continue work on the project and for this we are grateful to the Office of the Dean, particularly to Phyllis Callahan and Nancy Arthur for their continued interest and words of encouragement.

Work on the series, of which this volume is a part, was generously funded by the Joanna Jackson Goldman Memorial Prize through the Honors Program at Miami University. We owe a great deal to Carolyn Haynes, and the 2010 Honors & Scholars Program Advisory Committee for their interest and confidence in the project.

The technical aspects of the project were made possible through the invaluable advice and support of Bill Hayes, Christopher Kuo, and Daniel Meyers. The equipment and staff of Miami University's Interactive Language Resource Center were a great help along the way. We are also indebted to the Perseus Project, especially Gregory Crane and Bridget Almas, for their technical help and resources.

We owe a great deal of thanks to Cynthia Klestinec, who first sparked our interest in the history of medicine. We also thank Susan Stephens and Julia Nelson-Hawkins for introducing us to the larger field of medical humanities.

Special thanks are due to Lu Chen for offering her medical knowledge, which was a great help in making sense of this text, and also for her assistance in the creation of the medical glossary included in the appendices.

We also profited greatly from advice and help on the POD process from Geoffrey Steadman. All responsibility for errors, however, rests with the authors themselves.

Catherine A. Shi
medicae, philosophae, amicae

Introduction

The aim of this book is to make Hippocrates' *On Airs, Waters and Places* and the *Hippocratic Oath* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. The commentary is almost exclusively grammatical, explaining subordinate clauses, unusual verb forms, and dialectic peculiarities. The page by page vocabularies gloss all but the most common words. We have endeavored to make these glossaries as useful as possible without becoming fulsome. A glossary of frequently occurring vocabulary can be found as an appendix in the back, but it is our hope that most readers will not need to use this appendix often. Brief summaries of a number of grammatical and morphological topics are interspersed through the text as well, and there is a list of verbs used by Hippocrates that have unusual forms in an appendix. The principal parts of those verbs are given there rather than in the glossaries. Special topics, such as directions and geography, are also presented briefly, along with a medical glossary.

Hippocrates' *On Airs, Waters and Places* is a great text for intermediate readers. The simple sentence structure makes it easy to read, while its subject matter, the impact of climate on disease and character, is interesting for a number of reasons. The presentation falls roughly into two halves, the first detailing various environmental factors that contribute to specific diseases, the second more ethnographic in its account of the differences between Asians and Europeans as a function of their environment and customs. This latter section dovetails with some of Herodotus' ethnographic accounts and has been sometimes explained in the context of fifth century Greek hostility towards their Persian neighbors. However, as Rosalind Thomas points out, the main divide does not seem to be between Greeks and barbarians as such (the Persians are not mentioned at all), but between the two continents of Asia and Europe; and even this grand scheme plays out only minimally in the text as a whole.¹ For example, the account of the Asian "Longheads" (Μακροκέφαλοι) described in section 14 emphasizes the mutual contributions of *physis* and *nomos*. But the emasculated Scythian men (*Anarieis*) in section 22, who are also mentioned by Herodotus (*Histories* 1. 105; 4.67), are clearly Europeans;² and their condition is

-
1. R. Thomas, *Herodotus in Context* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2000), 75-101.
 2. For the class of androgynous *Anarieis* in Herodotus and *AWP*, see C. Chiasson. "Scythian Androgyny and Environmental Determinism in Herodotus and the Hippocratic *περὶ ἀέρων ὑδάτων τόπων*." *Syllecta Classica* 12 (2001), 33-73.

given an elaborate explanation that ultimately comes from their habit of riding horses. In any case, negative stereotypes about Asians gave this text a prominent place in discussions of environmental determinism in the early modern period, where similar arguments were used to differentiate and hierarchize races of humans.³ The multiple “globalizations” of the modern period have repeatedly led to an intensification of interest in the relationship between geography and disease, and of the difference between epidemic and endemic diseases, both central concerns of AWP.⁴ The intended reader of the first half of AWP seems to be the itinerant physician, who must pay attention to such local conditions in making his diagnoses. The ethnographic second half seems to veer from medicine into more tendentious assertions about Asians, assertions that are given a more scientific cast by their juxtaposition with the preceding sections.

The Hippocratic Oath is one of the most famous legacies from antiquity. Deployed in modified form throughout the middle ages, it is the basis for the pledge taken by health professionals today to practice medicine in an ethical way. We include it in this volume because of its long-term historical interest.

On Airs, Waters and Places and *The Oath* are part of the Hippocratic Corpus, a collection of medical writings whose relationship to the historical figure Hippocrates of Kos, the father of medicine (460 BC – 370 BC), is not always clear. AWP is associated with the treatise *On the Sacred Disease* in that both reject divine causes for disease in favor of environmental factors. For a close examination of the *Oath*’s distinctive language, see the discussion of H. von Stadten, “‘The Oath’, the oaths, and the Hippocratic Corpus,” in *La science médicale antique: Études réunies en l’honneur d Jacques Jouanna*, ed. V. Boudon-Millot, A. Guardasole et C. Magdelaine (Beauchesne: Paris, 2007), 425–66.

-
3. D. McCoskey, *Race: Antiquity and its Legacy* (Oxford: I.B. Tauris, 2012), 46–9; A. Wear, “Place, Health, and Disease: The *Airs, Water, Places* Tradition in early Modern England and North America.” *Journal of Medieval and Early Modern Studies* 38:3 (Fall, 2008), 443–65.
 4. Frank Barrett, *Disease and Geography: The History of an Idea*. Geographical Monographs 23 (Toronto: Becker, 2000).

How to use this book:

The presentation assumes the reader has a basic acquaintance with Greek grammar. Generally, particles have not been included in the page-by-page glossaries, along with other common nouns and adjectives. If necessary, all of these words can be found in the glossary at the end. Verbs, being a special problem in Greek, have been treated more fully. A simple and more generic dictionary entry is given in the glossary on each page, with a more specific meaning provided in the commentary below if necessary. We have also included a list of verbs with unusual forms and their principal parts as an appendix, which should be useful in identifying the dictionary form of verbs. A good strategy for attacking a text like this is to read a section of the Greek to get as much out of it as possible, then to look at the glossary below for unrecognized vocabulary items, and lastly to consult the commentary. The fuller glossary at the end of the book can be a last resort.

In translating expressions we have sought to provide an English version that reproduces the grammatical relationships as much as possible, producing in many cases awkward expressions (sometimes called “translationese”). Good idiomatic translations are available for this text, but the translations in the commentary are meant to provide explanations of how the Greek works.

The Greek text contained in this volume is based on the Loeb edition of the works of Hippocrates: W. H. S. Jones, *Hippocrates* (Cambridge: Heinemann, 1922), which was made available by the Perseus Project via a Creative Commons License, as is our version. We have made a few minor changes for the sake of readability. This is not a professional edition; for that the reader is referred to the Budé edition of Jacques Jouanna. An excellent general introduction to Hippocrates and all his works can be found in Jacques Jouanna, *Hippocrates*, tr. M.B. DeBevoise (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 1999).

An Important Disclaimer:

This volume is a self-published “Print on Demand” (POD) book, and it has not been vetted or edited in the usual way by publishing professionals. There are sure to be some factual and typographical errors in the text, for which we apologize in advance. The volume is also available only through online distributors, since each book is printed only when ordered online. However, this publishing channel and format also account for the low price of the book; and it is a simple matter to make changes to the pdf file when they

come to our attention. For this reason, any corrections or suggestions for improvement are welcome and will be addressed as quickly as possible in future versions of the text.

Evan Hayes
hayesee@miamioh.edu

Stephen Nimis
nimissa@miamioh.edu

Evan Hayes is a recent graduate in Classics and Philosophy at Miami University
and the 2011 Joanna Jackson Goldman Scholar.

Stephen Nimis is a Professor of Classics at Miami University.

The Language of *Airs, Water, and Places*

The earliest scientific figures in the Greek tradition were from the region that bordered on the great near-eastern civilizations of Anatolia, and they were no doubt stimulated in their thinking by their contact with these advanced cultures. The most important Greek dialect spoken and written in this area was the Ionian, which differs in a number of ways from the closely related dialect of Attic, the dialect of Athens and its environs. While Attic eventually achieved an elevated status because of the cultural importance of Athens and its literary flowering in the fifth century BCE, the Ionic dialect continued to be the preferred dialect of scientific prose. The Greek of the Hippocratic corpus, among which is *Airs, Waters, Places*, is basically Attic Greek, but exhibits a number of Ionic features.

Many features of Ionic Greek present no difficulty at all. In fact, most uncontracted forms look more regular than their Attic equivalents:

Ionic	Attic
φλεγματώδεις	φλεγματώδεις
εὐρέες	εὐρεῖς
θέρεος	θέρους
βραχέος	βραχοῦς
πόλιος	πόλεως
φύσιος	φύσεως
έωυτέων	έαυτῶν
τῶν ὠρέων	τῶν ὠρῶν
χρέονται	χρῶνται (from χράομαι)
ἐπικαταρρέοντο	ἐπικαταρροῦντο
δοκέουσι	δοκοῦσι
ποιέουσι	ποιοῦσι
οὐρέουσι	οὐροῦσι
οιδέοντα	οιδοῦντα
χωρέοντα	χωροῦντα
κέονται	κεῖνται
δοκέοι	δοκοίη (optative)

So also the retention of **η** where Attic would have an **α** is easy to spot:

Ionic	Attic
ἰητρικήν	ιατρικήν
χώρη	χώρα
βορέην	βορέαν
ᾠρη	ᾠρα
ἡμέρης	ἡμέρας
έτέρην	έτέραν

The appearance of **ου** for **ο**; **ων** for **αν**; and other minor modifications are usually not problems. Here are some examples:

Ionic	Attic
μοῦνος	μόνος
νούσων	νόσων
έωυτέων	έαυτῶν
τωῦτό	ταῦτό (=τὸ αὐτό)
εἵνεκα	ένεκα
αιεί	ἀεί
ές	εἰς
μέζων	μείζων
καλεύμενα	καλούμενα
σκοπεύμενος	σκοπούμενος

A **κ**- is regularly substituted for **-π** in interrogative words:

κῶς	πῶς
ὅκως	ὅπως
ὁκοίη	ὁποίη
ὅκοιος	ὅποιος
κότε	πότε

Note the endings for the dative plural of first and second declensions. AWP vacillates between Attic and Ionic forms.

Ionic	Attic
τῇσι μεταβολῇσιν	ταῖς μεταβολαῖς
ἀλλήλοισιν	ἀλλήλοις
ἀνθρώποισιν	ἀνθρώποις
ἀλυκοῖσι καὶ ἀτεράμνοισιν	ἀλυκοῖς καὶ ἀτεράμνοις

Note the declension of third declension nouns like πόλις:

	nom. sing.	gen. sing.	nom. pl.	acc. pl.
Attic	πόλις	πόλεως	πόλεις	πόλεις
Ionic	πόλις	πόλιος	πόλιες	πόλιας
Attic	φύσις	φύσεως	φύσεις	φύσεις
Ionic	φύσις	φύσιος	φύσιες	φύσιας

Note the forms of the present participle of εἶμι:

Ionic	Attic
έών	ών
έόντα	όντα
έούσης	ούσης

More common than usual is the use of anastrophe, the placement of a preposition after the noun it governs, with a change of accent on the preposition:

τῶν ὑδάτων πέρι for περὶ τῶν ὑδάτων
Cf. λοιπῶν πέρι; ἐαυτῶν πέρι

Abbreviations

abs.	absolute	nom.	nominative
acc.	accusative	obj.	object
act.	active	opt.	optative
adj.	adjective	part.	participle
adv.	adverb	pas.	passive
ao.	aorist	perf.	perfect
app.	appositive	pl.	plural
cl.	clause	plupf.	pluperfect
comp.	comparative	pred.	predicate
dat.	dative	prep.	preposition
dir. obj.	direct object	pr.	present
epex.	epexegetic	pron.	pronoun
f.	feminine	purp.	purpose
fut.	future	ref.	reference
gen.	genitive or general	reflex.	reflexive
impf.	imperfect	rel.	relative
imper.	imperative	sc.	scilicet (<i>indicates a word that must be supplied from the context</i>)
ind. com.	indirect command		
ind. quest.	indirect question		
ind. st.	indirect statement	seq.	sequence
indic.	indicative	sg.	singular
ind. obj.	indirect object	subj.	subject or subjunctive
inf.	infinitive	superl.	superlative
m.	masculine	temp.	temporal
n.	neuter	voc.	vocative

Ἱπποκράτους
Περὶ Ἀέρων,
Ὑδάτων, Τόπων

Hippocrates'
*On Airs, Waters, and
Places*

ΠΕΡΙ ΑΕΡΩΝ ΥΔΑΤΩΝ ΤΟΠΩΝ

The physician must consider environmental factors when diagnosing diseases in a particular place, and also the mode of life of the inhabitants.

[1.] Ἱητρικὴν ὅστις βούλεται ὀρθῶς ζητεῖν, τάδε χρὴ ποιεῖν: πρῶτον μὲν ἐνθυμεῖσθαι τὰς ὥρας τοῦ ἔτους, ὃ τι δύναται ἀπεργάζεσθαι ἐκάστη: οὐ γὰρ εἰκόασιν ἀλλήλοισιν οὐδέν, ἀλλὰ πολὺ διαφέρουσιν αὐταί τε ἐφ' ἑωυτέων καὶ ἐν τῇσι μεταβολῇσιν: ἔπειτα δὲ τὰ πνεύματα τὰ θερμά τε καὶ τὰ ψυχρά: μάλιστα μὲν τὰ κοινὰ πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποισιν, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐν ἐκάστη χώρῃ ἐπιχώρια ἔόντα. δεῖ δὲ καὶ τῶν υδάτων

ἀπεργάζομαι: to work out, produce

βούλομαι: to wish, want

δεῖ: it is necessary

διαφέρω: to differ

δύναμαι: to be able

ἐκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each

ἐνθυμέομαι: to consider, reflect on,
ponder

ἔοικα: to seem, be like

ἔπειτα: then, next

ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, native, local

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

ζητέω: to seek, pursue

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

ἱητρικός, -ή, -όν: of healing, medical

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared in
common

μάλιστα: most, especially

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change

ὀρθῶς: rightly, correctly

ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι: whoever

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: all, every, whole

ποιέω: to make, do

χρῆ: it is necessary (+ inf.)

χώρα, ἡ: a place, space

ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chilly

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, time, season

ἱητρικὴν (sc. τέχνην): “the healing art” i.e. medicine

τάδε: “the following things”

ἐνθυμεῖσθαι (sc. χρῆ): pr. inf., “(it is necessary) to consider”

ὃ τι δύναται: “what (each season) is able to” + inf.

εἰκόασιν: perf. of εἶκω, “they are not the same”

οὐδέν: acc. of resp., “in any way”

πολὺν: acc. of degree, “by much”

ἐφ' ἑωυτέων (=ἐαυτῶν): “by themselves”

ἔπειτα δὲ (sc. χρῆ ἐνθυμεῖσθαι): “next it is necessary to consider”

μάλιστα μὲν ... ἔπειτα δὲ: “especially those ... and next those (other)”

ἀνθρώποισιν: dat. with κοινὰ, “the ones common to all men”

ἔόντα (=όντα): n. pl. agreeing with πνεύματα, “the airs that are”

Hippocrates

ἐνθυμεῖσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις: ὥσπερ γὰρ ἐν τῷ στόματι
διαφέρουσι καὶ ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ, οὕτω καὶ ἡ δύναμις διαφέρει
πολὺν ἐκάστου. ὥστε, ἐς πόλιν ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκεταιί τις, ἥς

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive

διαφέρω: to differ

δύναμις, -ιος, ἥ: a power, ability, property

ἐκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each

ἐνθυμέομαι: to consider, reflect on,
ponder

ἐπειδάν: whenever

σταθμόν, τό: weight

στόμα, -ατος, τό: the mouth

ὥστε: so, therefore

ὥσπερ γὰρ ... οὕτω καὶ: “for just as ... so also”

ἐν τῷ στόματι: “on the mouth,” i.e. in taste

ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ: “on the scale,” i.e. in weight

ὥστε ... χρῆ: result clause, “so that it is necessary”

ἐπειδὰν ἀφίκεταιί: ao. subj. of ἀφικνέομαι in gen. temp. clause, “whenever
someone arrives”

ἥς: rel. pron. with antec. πόλιν gen. after ἀπειρός, “of which he is inexperienced”

Accusative + Infinitive Constructions in AWP

The words εἰκός and ἀναγκή, with or without ἐστι, meaning “it is likely” and “it is necessary,” form impersonal constructions that take a complementary infinitive. Other impersonal expressions that take a complementary infinitive are οἶον τε ἐστι, “it is possible,” χρῆ “it is necessary” and δεῖ “it is necessary.”

τάδε χρῆ ποιεῖν πρῶτον μὲν ἐνθυμεῖσθαι τὰς ὥρας

it is necessary to do the following things: first (it is necessary) to consider the seasons

If the subject of the infinitive is expressed, it will usually be in the accusative case, like articular infinitives, infinitives in indirect statement, etc.

εἰκὸς γὰρ τοὺς μὲν πλουσίους θύειν πολλὰ τοῖς θεοῖς

it is likely that the rich sacrifice much to the gods

Also common in AWP is for simple predications to take the form of an accusative subject with an infinitive, as though some impersonal construction were understood from the context.

τά τε εἶδεα ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν ἀτονώτερα εἶναι· ἐσθίειν δ' οὐκ ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι οὐδὲ πίνειν

Their physiques are usually flabby; they are not good at eating and drinking.

The use of the infinitive here (instead of τά τε εἶδεα ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν ἀτονώτερα ἐστι· ἐσθίειν δ' οὐκ ἀγαθοὶ εἶσι οὐδὲ πίνειν) may make these expressions seem more abstract, because infinitives are timeless.

ἄπειρός ἐστι, διαφροντίσαι χρὴ τὴν θέσιν αὐτῆς, ὅπως κεῖται
καὶ πρὸς τὰ πνεύματα καὶ πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολὰς τοῦ ἡλίου: οὐ
γὰρ τωὐτὸ δύναται ἥτις πρὸς βορέην κεῖται, καὶ ἥτις πρὸς
νότον, οὐδ' ἥτις πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνίσχοντα, οὐδ' ἥτις πρὸς
δύνοντα. ταῦτα δὲ χρὴ ἐνθυμείσθαι ὡς κάλλιστα καὶ τῶν
ὑδάτων πέρι ὡς ἔχουσι, καὶ πότερον ἐλώδεσι χρέονται καὶ
μαλακοῖσιν ἢ σκληροῖσί τε καὶ ἐκ μετεώρων καὶ πετρωδέων,
εἴτε ἀλυκοῖσι καὶ ἀτεράμνοισιν: καὶ τὴν γῆν, πότερον ψιλὴ τε
καὶ ἄνυδρος ἢ δασεῖα καὶ ἔφυδρος, καὶ εἴτε ἔγκοιλος ἐστὶ καὶ

ἀλυκός, -ή, -όν: salty, briny	ἐνθυμέομαι: to consider, reflect on, ponder
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising	ἔφυδρος, -ον: wet, moist, rainy
ἀνίσχω: to rise up (of the sun)	θέσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting, placement
ἄνυδρος, -ον: waterless, dry	κεῖμαι: to be positioned
ἄπειρος, -ον: without experience, unacquainted	μαλακός, -ή, -όν: soft
ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened, harsh	μετέωρος, -ον: hanging, high
βορέας, -ου, ὁ: the north	νότος, ὁ: the south
γῆ, ἡ: earth	ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅ τι: whoever, whatever
δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: leafy, wooded	πετρώδης, -ες: rocky, stony
διαφροντίζω: to meditate on, consider	πότερος, -η, -ον: whether
δύναμαι: to be able, capable, strong enough	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
δύνω: to sink, set (of the sun)	χρέομαι: to use
ἐγκοῖλος, -όν: hollow, sunken	χρὴ: it is necessary
εἴτε...εἴτε: whether...or	ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare, empty
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy	ὥς: so, as, (+ super.) as... as possible

διαφροντίσαι: ao. inf., “it is necessary to consider”
ὅπως κεῖται: ind. quest. after διαφροντίσαι, “how it is positioned”
τωὐτό: crasis for τὸ αὐτό acc. resp., “is powerful in the same way”
ἥτις (sc. πόλις): “whatever city lies”
ὡς κάλλιστα: “as well as possible”
ταῦτα: “these things also,” explained by the ind. questions in the next several sentences
ὑδάτων πέρι: note the accent on πέρι indicating its object precedes
ὡς ἔχουσι: ind. quest., “how they are disposed”
πότερον χρέονται: ind. quest., “whether they use” + dat.
ἢ σκληροῖσί (sc. ὑδάσι): dat. after χρέονται, “or hard waters”
εἴτε: introd. ind. quest., “whether (they use)”
γῆν: acc. resp., “as for the soil”

Hippocrates

πνιγηρῇ, εἴτε μετέωρος καὶ ψυχρή: καὶ τὴν δίαιταν τῶν ἀνθρώπων, ὅκοίη ἤδονται, πότερον φιλοπόται καὶ ἀριστηταὶ καὶ ἀταλαίπωροι, ἢ φιλογυμνασταί τε καὶ φιλόπονοι, καὶ ἐδωδοὶ καὶ ἄποτοι.

Knowing these factors will help diagnose endemic diseases. Astronomy and meteorology are also helpful to the doctor.

[2.] καὶ ἀπὸ τουτῶν χρή ἐνθυμεῖσθαι ἕκαστα. εἰ γὰρ ταῦτα εἰδείη τις καλῶς, μάλιστα μὲν πάντα, εἰ δὲ μὴ, τά γε πλείστα, οὐκ ἂν αὐτὸν λανθάνοι ἐς πόλιν ἀφικνεόμενον, ἥς ἂν ἄπειρος ᾗ, οὔτε νοσήματα ἐπιχώρια, οὔτε τῶν κοινῶν ἢ φύσις, ὅκοίη τίς ἐστιν: ὥστε μὴ ἀπορεῖσθαι ἐν τῇ θεραπείῃ τῶν

ἄπειρος, -ον: without experience of (+ gen.)
 ἀπορέω: to be without means, be at a loss
 ἄποτος, -ον: not given to drink
 ἀριστητής, -οῦ, ὁ: one who eats lunch
 ἀταλαίπωρος, -ον: lazy, not given to hard work
 ἀφικνεόμαι: to come to, arrive
 δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, lifestyle
 ἐδωδός, -όν: eating much
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each
 ἐνθυμέομαι: to consider, reflect on, ponder
 ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, native, endemic
 ἡδομαι: to enjoy (+ dat.)
 θεραπεία, ἡ: a treatment
 καλῶς: well

κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared
 λανθάνω: to escape notice, be unknown
 μάλιστα: most, especially
 μετέωρος, -ον: raised up, high
 νόσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease
 οἶδα: to know
 ὅκοιός, -η, -ον: of what sort, what kind
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: all, every, whole
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 πνιγηρός, -ή, -όν: choking, stifling (with heat)
 πότερος, -η, -ον: whether
 φιλογυμναστής, -οῦ, ὁ: one fond of exercise, an athlete
 φιλόπονος, -ον: industrious, diligent
 φιλοπότης, -ου, ὁ: a lover of drinking
 χρή: it is necessary
 ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

ὅκοίη: dat. (Att. ὀποίη) after ἤδονται, “what sort of lifestyle they enjoy”
 ἀριστηταὶ: those who eat more than one large meal in a day.
 εἰ εἰδείη...ἂν λανθάνοι: opt. in fut. less vivid cond., “if someone should know... then it would not escape his notice”
 εἰ δὲ μὴ: “if not (all of these things)”
 τά γε: “then certainly (most of these things)”
 ἂν ᾗ: pres. subj. of εἰμί in rel. clause with ἥς, “a city, with which he is unacquainted”
 οὔτε νοσήματα .. οὔτε ἡ φύσις: nom. subj. of λανθάνοι
 ὥστε μὴ ἀπορεῖσθαι: pr. inf. mid. in purpose clause, “so that he not be at as loss”

νούσων, μηδὲ διαμαρτάνειν, ἃ εἰκός ἐστι γίνεσθαι, ἣν μή τις ταῦτα πρότερον εἰδὼς προφροντίσῃ περὶ ἐκάστου. τοῦ δὲ χρόνου προϊόντος καὶ τοῦ ἐνιαυτοῦ, λέγοι ἂν, ὁκόσα τε νουσήματα μέλλει πάγκοινα τὴν πόλιν κατασχέσειν ἢ θέρεος ἢ χειμῶνος, ὁκόσα τε ἴδια ἐκάστῳ κίνδυνος γίνεσθαι ἐκ μεταβολῆς τῆς διαίτης. εἰδὼς γὰρ τῶν ὥρέων τὰς μεταβολὰς καὶ τῶν ἄστρον τὰς ἐπιτολάς τε καὶ δύσεις, καθότι ἕκαστον τουτῶν γίνεται, προειδείη ἂν τὸ ἔτος ὁκοῖόν τι μέλλει γίνεσθαι. οὕτως ἂν τις ἐρευνώμενος καὶ προγιγνώσκων τοὺς

ἄστρον, τό: a star

δαίτα, ἡ: a way of living, mode of life

διαμαρτάνω: to go astray, make a mistake

δύσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting

εἰκός: likely, probable

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each

ἐνιαυτός, ό: a year

ἐπιτολή, ἡ: a rising

ἐρευνάω: to seek, search for

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

θέρος, -εος, τό: summer

ἴδιος, -η, -ον: one's own, individual

καθότι: in what manner

κατέχω: to hold fast, occupy, possess

κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk, hazard

λέγω: to say

μέλλω: to be about to, be going to (+ inf.)

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

νουσήμα, -ατος, τό: a disease, illness

νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease

οἶδα: to know

ὁκοῖος: of what sort, what kind

πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, epidemic

προγιγνώσκω: to know, perceive, learn

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

πρόοιδα: to know beforehand

πρότερος, -η, -ον: before, earlier

προφροντίζω: to consider before

χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ό: winter

χρόνος, ό: time, season

ῶρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἣν μή προφροντίσῃ: ao. subj. in pr. gen. cond., "if someone does not consider"

εἰδὼς: ao. part., "having known these previously"

προϊόντος: pr. part. of προ-έρχομαι in gen. abs., "as the time and the year advances"

λέγοι ἂν: pot. opt., "he could say what diseases"

κατασχέσειν: fut. inf. of κατα-ἔχω complementing μέλλω, "about to take hold"

θέρεος, χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, "either in summer or in winter"

ἐκάστῳ: dat. of ref., "the danger to each"

γίνεσθαι: pr. inf. explaining κίνδυνος, "danger to happen"

εἰδὼς: ao. part. instrumental, "by knowing"

προειδείη ἂν: pot. opt., "he would know beforehand"

οὕτως ἂν: anticipating the pot. opt. to come, "in this way he would...."

ἐρευνώμενος καὶ προγιγνώσκων: pr. part. with instrumental force, "by seeking and learning"

Hippocrates

καιροὺς, μάλιστ' ἂν εἰδείη περὶ ἐκάστου, καὶ τὰ πλείστα τυγχάνοι τῆς ὑγείης, καὶ κατορθοίη οὐκ ἐλάχιστα ἐν τῇ τέχνῃ. εἰ δὲ δοκέοι τις ταῦτα μετεωρολόγα εἶναι, εἰ μετασταίη τῆς γνώμης, μάθοι ἂν ὅτι οὐκ ἐλάχιστον μέρος συμβάλλεται ἀστρονομίῃ ἐς ἱητρικὴν, ἀλλὰ πάνυ πλείστον. ἅμα γὰρ τῇσιν ὥρησι καὶ αἱ νοῦσαι καὶ αἱ κοιλίαι μεταβάλλουσι τοῖσιν ἀνθρώποισιν.

The effects of a city being exposed to hot southern winds and being sheltered from northern winds.

[3] ὅκως δὲ χρὴ ἕκαστα τῶν προειρημένων σκοπεῖν καὶ βασανίζειν, ἐγὼ φράσω σαφέως. ἥτις μὲν πόλις πρὸς τὰ

ἅμα: together with (+ dat.)	μετεωρολόγος, -ον: meteorological, of the astronomer
ἀστρονομίῃ, ἡ: astronomy	οἶδα: to know
βασανίζω: to examine closely	πάνυ: altogether, entirely
γνώμη, ἡ: a means of knowing, a mark, token	πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
δοκέω: to think, suppose, expect	προλέγω: to say beforehand
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each	σαφέως: clearly, plainly
ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least	σκοπέω: to look at, view
ἱατρικός, -ή, -όν: of a physician, medical	συμβάλλω: to throw together, lend, contribute
καιρός, ὁ: (exact) time, season	τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill, craft
κατορθόω: to set straight, achieve	τυγχάνω: to hit upon (+ gen.)
κοιλίῃ, ἡ: a belly	ὑγείῃ, ἡ: health, soundness
μανθάνω: to learn, understand	φράζω: to show, indicate
μεθίστημι: to change	χρή: it is necessary
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share	ὥρῃ, ἡ: a period, season
μεταβάλλω: to turn quickly, change	

ἂν εἰδείη: pot. opt., “he would know”

τυγχάνοι, κατορθοίη: pot. opt., “he would come upon, he would achieve”

εἰ δοκέοι... μάθοι ἂν: opt. in fut. less vivid cond., “Should someone believe...he would understand”

εἰ μετασταίη: second protasis, “if he should change”

ὅτι συμβάλλεται: ind. st. after μάθοι, “he would understand that astronomy contributes”

ἐς ἱητρικὴν: “to the practice of medicine”

τοῖσιν ἀνθρώποισιν: dat. of ref., “for men”

τῶν προειρημένων: perf. part. gen. of προ-λέγω, “of the aforementioned things”

πνεύματα κείται τὰ θερμά: — ταῦτα δ' ἔσται μεταξὺ τῆς τε χειμερινῆς ἀνατολῆς τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῶν δυσμέων τῶν χειμερινῶν — καὶ αὐτῇ ταῦτα τὰ πνεύματά ἐστι σύννομα, τῶν δὲ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρκτων πνευμάτων σκέπη: ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει ἐστὶ τά τε ὕδατα πολλὰ καὶ ὕφαλα, καὶ ἀνάγκη εἶναι μετέωρα, τοῦ μὲν θέρεος θερμὰ, τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος ψυχρά: τοὺς τε ἀνθρώπους

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising
ἄρκτος, ἡ: north
δυσμή, ἡ: a setting
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
κείμεαι: to be laid, be positioned
μεταξύ: between (+ gen.)

μετέωρος, -ον: raised, elevated
σκέπη, ἡ: a shelter, protection
σύννομος, -ον: associated with (+ dat.)
ὕφαλος, -ον: briny, salty
χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of winter, wintery
χειμών, -ῶνος, ό: winter
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

τὰ θερμά: attributive, “the hot (winds)”

μεταξύ: between the winter and summer risings of the sun, i.e. roughly ESE to WSW. See p. 14

αὐτῇ: dat. after σύννομα, “these winds are associated with this (city)”

ἀνάγκη εἶναι μετέωρα: “and it is necessary that they (the waters) be elevated” i.e. not from a deep source

θέρεος, χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, “in the summer... in the winter”

Note the different meanings of the word αὐτός:

1.) Without the definite article

- a.) The nominative forms of the word always are intensive (= Latin ipse): αὐτός: he himself, αὐτοί, they themselves; αἱ γυναῖκες δαιτεῦνται αὐτοὶ δ' ἐφ' ἵππων ὀχεῦνται οἱ ἄνδρες: “The women live thus, but the men themselves go on horses”
- b.) The other cases of the word are the unemphatic third person pronouns: him, them, etc. This is the most common use in AWP: τὰς κοιλίας αὐτῶν, their bellies; αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιχώρια, “native to them”

2.) With the definite article

- a.) In predicative position, it is also intensive (= Latin ipse): τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτόν: the man himself; αὐτὴ ἡ γῆ, the earth itself.
- b.) in attributive position or with no noun, it means “the same”: τὸν αὐτόν ἄνδρα: the same man; τωὐτὸ (=τὸ αὐτό) δύνатаι, “is powerful in the same way”; συστραφῇ ἐς τὸ αὐτό, “compressed into the same place”

Hippocrates

τὰς κεφαλὰς ὑγρὰς ἔχειν καὶ φλεγματώδεις, τὰς τε κοιλίας αὐτῶν πυκνὰ ἐκταράσσεσθαι, ἀπὸ τῆς κεφαλῆς τοῦ φλέγματος ἐπικαταρρέοντος: τὰ τε εἶδεα ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν ἀτονώτερα εἶναι: ἐσθίειν δ' οὐκ ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι οὐδὲ πίνειν: ὁκόσοι μὲν γὰρ κεφαλὰς ἀσθενέας ἔχουσιν, οὐκ ἂν εἴησαν ἀγαθοὶ πίνειν: ἡ γὰρ κραιπάλη μᾶλλον πιέζει: νοσήματά τε τάδε ἐπιχώρια εἶναι: πρῶτον μὲν τὰς γυναῖκας νοσερὰς καὶ ῥοώδεις εἶναι: ἔπειτα πολλὰς ἀτόκους ὑπὸ νόσου καὶ οὐ φύσει ἐκτιτρώσκεσθαι τε

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good	κοιλίη, ἡ: a belly
ἀσθενής, -ές: weak, feeble	κραίπαλη, ἡ: drunkenness, hangover
ἄτοκος, -ον: never having had a child, barren	νοσερός, -ή, -όν: sickly
ἄτονος, -ον: flabby	νούσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman	νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure	πιέζω: to press, oppress
ἐκταράσσω: to agitate, throw into disorder	πίνω: to drink
ἐκτιτρώσκω: to bear untimely, miscarry	πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number, crowd, multitude
ἔπειτα: thereupon	πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first
ἐπικαταρρέω: to flow down	πυκνά: much, often
ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, local, endemic	ῥοώδης, -ες: with a strong flow, running
ἐσθίω: to eat	ὕγρος, -ή, -όν: wet, moist
κεφαλή, ἡ: a head	φλέγμα, -ατος, τό: phlegm
	φλεγματώδης, -ες: full of phlegm, phlegmatic

ἔχειν: inf. with acc. subj., “the men *have*”

ὕγρὰς καὶ φλεγματώδεις: pred. adj., “heads that are *moist and full of phlegm*”

ἐκταράσσεσθαι: pas. inf. with acc. subj., “the wombs *are agitated*”

τοῦ φλέγματος ἐπικαταρρέοντος: gen. abs. with causal force, “because of the phlegm flowing”

ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος: “for the most part”

τὰ εἶδεα εἶναι: inf. with acc. subj., “their statures *are*”

οὐκ εἶναι: inf. with acc. subj., “they are not able to” + inf.

οὐκ ἂν εἴησαν: pr. opt. pot. of εἶμι, “they would not be”

πίνειν: epex. inf. after ἀγαθοὶ, “good at drinking”

εἶναι: inf. with acc. subj., “the local diseases *are*”; “the women *are*”

ὑπὸ νόσου: expressing agency, “by disease”

φύσει: dat. of means, “and not by nature”

ἐκτιτρώσκεσθαι: the subj. is πολλὰς (γυναῖκας)

Agency and Means

The dative is the normal case for showing the **instrument** or **means** used for an action, as opposed to the **agent** of an action, which is expressed with ὑπό + the genitive case. While an agent is a person or something quasi-personal (a group of people, a city, etc.), an instrument is usually an object of some kind (e.g., by Professor Plum *with* the rope). However, various kinds of external forces can be put in the agency expression, and this is common in AWP. Such agents include natural forces, such as the sun, winter, winds, rain, but also factors like heat, cold, lightness, weight, wetness, weakness. More concrete things like disease, sores, and even urine are also expressed as agents. Note the following examples which show the variation in use:

ἔπειτα πολλὰς ἀτόκους ὑπὸ νούσου, καὶ οὐ φύσει

“next, many are barren *because of disease*, and not *by natural growth*”

ὁκόσα δὲ μεγάλα (sc. διαφέρει) ἢ φύσει ἢ νόμῳ, ἐρέω περὶ αὐτέων.

“The ones which differ greatly *by natural growth* or *by custom*, I will speak about them.”

ὥστε, καὶ εἴ τις φύσει πέφυκεν ἀνδρείος καὶ εὐψυχος,
ἀποτρέπεσθαι τὴν γνώμην ὑπὸ τῶν νόμων.

“with the result that, if someone has become courageous *by natural growth*, the mind becomes turned *by customs*.”

In a magico-religious context—Homer’s epics, for example—agency is usually ascribed to various gods, who “put thoughts into the minds” of heroes, infuse into them “warlike spirit,” etc. Crucial to the articulation of ancient medical discourse is the transfer of agency (*dynamis*) from such unseen daemonic powers to various kinds of physical entities, inside and outside the body. This is different from literary tropes like personification or anthropomorphism, even though the lines of demarcation cannot be drawn clearly. See Brooke Holmes, *The Symptom and The Subject* (Princeton, 2010), 121-47.

Hippocrates

πυκνά: τοῖσί τε παιδίοισιν ἐπιπίπτειν σπασμούς τε καὶ ἄσθματα καὶ ἃ νομίζουσι τὸ παιδίον ποιεῖν, καὶ ἱερὴν νοῦσον εἶναι: τοῖσι δὲ ἀνδράσι δυσεντερίας καὶ διαρροίας καὶ ἡπιάλους καὶ πυρετοὺς πολυχρονίους χειμερινούς καὶ ἐπινυκτίδας πολλὰς καὶ αἰμορροΐδας ἐν τῇ ἔδρῃ. πλευρίτιδες

αἰμορροΐς, ἡ: a hemorrhoid	νομίζω: to hold, think, believe
ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man	νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
ἄσθμα, -ατος, τό: short breathing, asthma	παιδίον, τό: a young child
διάρροια, ἡ: diarrhea	πλευρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: pleurisy
δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery	ποιέω: to make, do
ἔδρη, ἡ: a seat, rump	πολυχρόνιος, -ον: chronic
ἐπινυκτίς, -ιδος, ἡ: a pustule which is most painful at night	πυκνά: much, often
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over	πυρετός, ὁ: burning heat, fever
ἡπιάλος, ὁ: ague, chills	σπασμός, ὁ: a convulsion, spasm
ἱερός, -ά, -όν: sacred, divine	χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of winter, in winter

ἐπιπίπτειν: inf. with acc. subj., “convulsions fall upon”
 ποιεῖν: pr. inf. compl. νομίζουσι, “which they think to cause”
 τὸ παιδίον: “the child’s disease”
 ἱερὴν νοῦσον: “and to be the sacred disease,” i.e. epilepsy
 δυσεντερίας (sc. ἐπιπίπτειν): “upon the men dysentery falls”

Third Declension Nouns

Third declension nouns ending in *-is* like πόλις retain the *-i-* making them look more analogous to other third declension nouns.

nominative plural *-eis*

		nominative plural <i>-eis</i>	
		Ionic	Attic
genitive singular <i>-ios</i>		καθάρσιες	καθάρσεις
		φύσιες	φύσεις
		ἐκπλήξιες	ἐκπλήξεις
		κακώσεις	κακώσεις
		προφάσιες	προφάσεις
		accusative plural <i>-ias</i>	
Ionic	Attic	φύσιαις	φύσεις
κύστιος	κύστεως	δυνάμιας	δυνάμεις
πόλιος	πόλεως	δύσιας	δύσεις
πήξιος	πήξεως	πόλιας	πόλεις
φύσιος	φύσεως	προφάσιας	προφάσεις
μείξιος	μείξεως		

δὲ καὶ περιπλευμονίαι καὶ καῦσοι καὶ ὀκόσα ὀξέα νοσήματα νομίζονται εἶναι οὐκ ἐγγίνονται πολλά. οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε, ὅκου ἂν κοιλίαι ὑγραὶ ἔωσι, τὰς νούσους ταύτας ἰσχύειν. ὀφθαλμίαι τε ἐγγίνονται ὑγραὶ, καὶ οὐ χαλεπαὶ, ὀλιγοχρόνιοι, ἣν μὴ τι κατάσχη νόσημα πάγκοινον ἐκ μεταβολῆς μεγάλης. καὶ ὀκόταν τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτεα ὑπερβάλῃσι, κατάρροοι ἐπιγενόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου παραπληκτικούς ποιοῦσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὀκόταν ἐξαίφνης ἡλιωθῶσι τὴν κεφαλὴν, ἣ

ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place,
happen

ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain

ἐξαίφνης: suddenly

ἐπιγίνομαι: to come into being after,
supervene

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

ἡλιόομαι: to be in the sun

ἰσχύω: to be strong, prevail

κατάρροος, ὁ: a catarrh, inflammation of
the nose and throat

κατέχω: to hold fast, possess

καῦσος, -εος, τό: burning heat, fever

κεφαλὴ, ἡ: a head

κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, bowels

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change

νομίζω: to hold, think, believe

νοσήμα, -ατος, τό: a disease, illness

νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease

οἶος τε εἰμι: I am able to (+ inf.)

ὀκόταν: whenever (+ subj.)

ὅκου: where

ὀλιγοχρόνιος, -η, -ον: lasting little time,
of short duration

ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, acute

ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, an
inflammation of the eye

πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, epidemic

παραπληκτικός, -ή, -όν: suffering from
hemiplegia, paralytic

πεντήκοντα: fifty

περιπλευμονία, ἡ: an inflammation of the
lungs, pneumonia

ποιέω: to make, do

ύγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, running, loose

ύπερβάλλω: to overshoot, surpass, exceed

χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous,
serious

ὀξέα νοσήματα: pred., “whatever are considered to be acute diseases”

πολλά: adv. acc., “in many cases, often”

οὐ οἶόν τε (sc. **ἔστιν**): “for it is not possible” + inf.

ὅκου ἂν ἔωσι: pr. subj. of **εἰμι** in indefinite clause, “wherever the bowels are loose”

τὰς νούσους ταύτας: subj. acc. of **ἰσχύειν** (complementing **οἶόν τε**)

ἣν μὴ...κατάσχη: ao. subj. of **κατα-έχω** in general protasis, “unless an epidemic disease attacks”

ἐκ μεταβολῆς (sc. **τῶν ὥρέων**): “from a great change (of seasons)”

ύπερβάλλωσι: subj. in indefinite clause after **ὀκόταν** (=ὀκότε ἂν), “whenever they exceed fifty years (of age)”

παραπληκτικούς: pred., “make men paralytic”

ἡλιωθῶσι: ao. pas. subj. after **ὀκόταν** (=ὀκότε ἂν), “whenever they are exposed to the sun”

τὴν κεφαλὴν: acc. of respect, “they are exposed to the sun with respect to their head” i.e. their heads are exposed

Hippocrates

ρίγώσωσιν. ταῦτα μὲν τὰ νοσήματα αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιχώριά ἐστιν:
χωρὶς δὲ, ἣν τι πάγκοινον κατάσχη νόσημα ἐκ μεταβολῆς
τῶν ὥρέων, καὶ τούτου μετέχουσιν.

ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, local,
endemic

κατέχω: to hold fast, possess

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

μετέχω: to have a share in, take part in (+
gen.)

νόσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease

πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, epidemic

ρίγω: to be cold

χωρίς: separately, apart

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

ρίγώσωσιν: ao. subj. after ὁκόταν, “when they are cold

χωρὶς δὲ: “and besides (the endemic diseases)...”

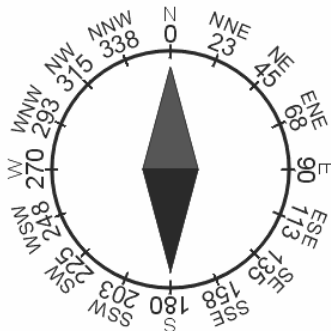
ἣν κατάσχη: ao. subj. κατα-έχω in pr. gen. cond., “if some epidemic disease
prevails...”

Directions in Hippocrates

The reader should note the meanings of the following expressions:

- (1) “between the winter rising of the sun and the winter setting” i. e. roughly East-Southeast to West-Southwest (113° to 248°)
- (2) “between the summer setting and the summer rising” i. e. roughly West-Northwest to East-Northeast (293° to 68°)
- (3) “between the summer and winter risings” i.e. roughly East Northeast to East Southeast (68° to 113°)

The exact number of degrees is a question of latitude. These directions are roughly correct for the Mediterranean area.



Adapted from W.H.S. Jones, Hippocrates Vol. 1 (Harvard University Press, Cambridge, 1957), p. 69.

General or Indefinite Clauses

The most common kind of conditional sentence in AWP is the so-called “present general condition,” which has **ἤν (ἐάν)** + the subjunctive in the protasis, and the present indicative in the apodosis. Here are some examples:

ἤν τι πάγκοινων κατὰσχη νόσσημα ... μετέχουσιν: “if any common disease takes hold, they share”

κῆν (καὶ ἐάν) μὲν τὸ θέρος αὐχμηρὸν γένηται, θᾶσσον παύονται αἱ νοῦσοι: “even if summer becomes dry, diseases cease quicker”

Such a sentence is distinguished from the so-called “future more vivid condition” by the latter’s use of the future indicative in the apodosis. Compare:

κῆν (καὶ ἐάν) μὲν τὸ θέρος αὐχμηρὸν γένηται, θᾶσσον παύσονται αἱ νοῦσοι: “even if summer becomes dry, diseases *will* cease quicker”

In this case, the condition is speaking about a more specific *probability* in the future.

A parallel construction is the use of **ἄν** + the subjunctive with temporal particles or relative pronouns to produce general temporal clauses (whenever...) or general relative clauses (whoever...). Here are some examples:

ἐπειδὴν (=ἐπειδὴ + ἄν) ἀφίκηται τις ... διαφροντίσαι χρὴ (έστι):
“after someone arrives ... it is necessary to consider”

ὁκόταν (όκοτε + ἄν) δέ τέκωσι, τὰ παιδιά ἀδύνατοι τρέφειν εἰσὶ:
“whenever they bear children, they are unable to nurse them.”

πρῶτον μὲν τὰς γυναῖκας, ὁκόσαι ἂν τύχωσιν ἐν γαστρὶ ἔχουσαι:
“first the women, *whenever they happen* to be pregnant.”

Contrast this last example with the use of the indicative in definite relative clauses:

ἔπειτα τὰ ὕδατα, ὁκόσα πρὸς τὰς τοῦ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς ἐστι ...:
“Next are the waters *which are* oriented toward the rising of the sun ...”

ἄριστα δὲ ὁκόσα ἐκ μετεώρων χωρίων ρεῖ: “best are the ones *which* flow from high places”

Hippocrates

The effects of a city being exposed to northern winds and sheltered from hot southern winds.

[4.] **ὁκόσαι δ' ἀντικέονται τούτων πρὸς τὰ πνεύματα τὰ ψυχρὰ τὰ μεταξὺ τῶν δυσμέων τῶν θερινῶν τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῆς ἀνατολῆς τῆς θερινῆς, καὶ αὐτῇσι ταῦτα τὰ πνεύματα ἐπιχώριά ἐστι, τοῦ δὲ νότου καὶ τῶν θερμῶν πνευμάτων σκέπη, ὥδε ἔχει περὶ τῶν πολίων τούτων. πρῶτον μὲν τὰ ὕδατα σκληρά τε καὶ ψυχρὰ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πλήθος ἐγγίνεται. τοὺς**

ἀνατολή: a rising, rise	μεταξύ: between
ἀντίκειμαι: to be set against, be opposite	νότος, ὁ: the south
δυσμή, ἡ: setting	πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number, crowd, multitude
ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place, happen	πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first
ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, local, endemic	σκέπη, ἡ: a covering, shelter, protection
θερινός, -ή, -όν: of the summer, in summer	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm	ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
	ὥδε: so, thus

ὁκόσαι δ' (sc. πολεῖς): answering to **ἥτις μὲν πόλεις** above, “but whatever cities”

τούτων: gen. after **ἀντικέονται**, “lie opposite to these (the warm winds)”

τὰ ψυχρὰ τὰ μεταξύ: attributive adj., “the cold ones between” + gen.

μεταξύ...θερινῆς: “between the summer settings and risings of the sun,” i.e.

roughly WNW to ENE. See p. 14

αὐτῇσι: dat. of ref., “the winds are local to them”

τοῦ νότου καὶ τῶν θερμῶν πνευμάτων: gen. of separation, “protection from the south and from hot winds”

ὥδε ἔχει: “so it is (as follows) concerning these cities”

ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πλήθος: “for the most part”

Note the different meanings of the verb ἔχω

The verb **ἔχω** has a range of special uses and meanings, the most important of which are as follows:

1. to have or possess: **τὰς δὲ κεφαλὰς ὑγιερὰς ἔχουσι**, “they have moist heads”
2. to have or possess a certain power, to be able to + infinitive
3. to have a certain condition, to be a certain way, often used with an adverb. **ἔχει ὁμοίως:** “it is similar”

The third meanings is found often in AWP in the two expressions

οὕτως ἔχει: “it is thus” i.e., as I just explained

ὥδε ἔχει: “it is so” i.e., as I am about to explain

δὲ ἀνθρώπους ἐντόνους τε καὶ σκελιφροὺς ἀνάγκη εἶναι, τοὺς τε πλείους τὰς κοιλίας ἀτεράμνους ἔχειν καὶ σκληρὰς τὰς κάτω, τὰς δὲ ἄνω εὐρωτέρας: χολώδεάς τε μᾶλλον ἢ φλεγματίας εἶναι. τὰς δὲ κεφαλὰς ὑγιερὰς ἔχουσι καὶ σκληράς: ῥηγματίαι τε εἰσὶν ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος. νοσεύματα δὲ αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιδημεῖ ταῦτα, πλευρίτιδες τε πολλαί, αἱ τε ὀξεῖαι νομιζόμεναι νοῦσοι. ἀνάγκη δὲ ὧδε ἔχειν, ὁκόταν αἱ κοιλίαι σκληραὶ ἔωσιν: ἔμπυοί τε πολλοὶ γίνονται ἀπὸ πάσης προφάσιος: τούτου δὲ αἰτιὸν ἐστὶ τοῦ σώματος ἡ ἔντασις καὶ

αἴτιον, τό: a cause	ὁκόταν: wherever (+ subj.)
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity	ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, acute
ἄνω: upwards	πλείων, -ον: more
ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened	πλευρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: pleurisy
ἔμπυος, -ον: suffering from an abscess	πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number, crowd, multitude
ἐντασις, -ιος, ἡ: tension	πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: a cause, provocation
ἐντονος, -ον: sinewy	ῥηγματίας, -ου, ὁ: prone to lacerations or rupture
ἐπιδημέω: to be at home, be epidemic	σκελιφρός, -ή, -όν: lean
εὐροος, -ον: flowing well, open	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
κάτω: down, downwards	σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
κεφαλῇ, ἡ: a head	ὑγιερός, -ή, -όν: healthy
κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels	φλεγμής, -ου, ὁ: phlegmatic
νομίζω: to hold, believe, consider	χολώδης, -ες: like bile, bilious
νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease	
νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease	

ἀνάγκη (sc. ἐστίν): “it is necessary for the men to be”

τοὺς πλείους: “the greater number (of men)” acc. subj. of ἔχειν

ἀτεράμνους καὶ σκληρὰς: pred., “have (upper) bowels that are unsoftened and hard”

τὰς κάτω, τὰς δὲ ἄνω: “the upper bowels, but the lower bowels”

φλεγματίας: acc. pl. pred., “and they are bilious and phlegmatic”

εἶναι: inf. with χρῆ understood from above.

ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος: “for the most part”

αὐτοῖσιν: dat. of ref., “are endemic to them”

αἱ τε νοῦσοι: “and the diseases considered,” αἱ has an accent because it is followed by an enclitic.

ἔχειν: inf. with ἀνάγκη, “it is necessary that it be so”

ἔωσιν: subj. after ὁκόταν (=ὁκότε ἄν), “wherever the bowels are hard”

Hippocrates

ἡ σκληρότης τῆς κοιλίης: ἡ γὰρ ξηρότης ῥηγματίας ποιεῖ
εἶναι, καὶ τοῦ ὕδατος ἡ ψυχρότης. ἐδωδὸς δὲ ἀνάγκη τὰς
τοιαύτας φύσεις εἶναι, καὶ οὐ πολυπότας: οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε ἅμα
πολυβόρους τε εἶναι καὶ πολυπότας: ὀφθαλμίας τε γίνεσθαι
μὲν διὰ χρόνου, γίνεσθαι δὲ σκληρὰς καὶ ἰσχυρὰς, καὶ εὐθέως
ῥήγνυσθαι τὰ ὄμματα: αἰμορροίας δὲ ἐκ τῶν ῥινῶν τοῖσι
νεωτέροισι τριήκοντα ἐτέων γίνεσθαι ἰσχυρὰς τοῦ θέρους: τὰ
τε ἱερὰ νοσεύματα καλούμενα, ὀλίγα μὲν ταῦτα, ἰσχυρὰ δέ.
μακροβίους δὲ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους τούτους μᾶλλον εἰκὸς εἶναι

αἰμόρροια, ἡ: a bleeding, hemorrhage

ἅμα: at the same time

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity

ἐδωδός, -όν: given to eating

εἰκός: likely

ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

εὐθέως: at once, directly

θέρους, -εος, τό: summer

ἱερός, -ή, -όν: sacred, divine

ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, severe

καλέω: to call

κοιλίη, ἡ: a belly, (pl.) bowels

μακρόβιος, -ον: long-lived

νεώτερος, -η, -ον: younger

νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease

ξηρότης, -ητος, ἡ: dryness

οἶος τε εἰμι: I am able to (+ inf.)

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, rare

ὄμμα, -ματος, τό: an eye

ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, inflammation of
the eye

ποιέω: to make, do, cause (+ inf.)

πολυβόρος, -ον: eating much

πολυπότης, -ου, ό: a heavy drinker

ῥηγματίας, -ου, ό: prone to lacerations or
rupture

ῥήγνυμι: to break, rupture

ῥίς, ῥινός, ἡ: a nose

σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard

σκληρότης, -ητος, ἡ: hardness

τριάκοντα: thirty

χρόνος, ό: time

ψυχρότης, -ητος, ἡ: coldness

ῥηγματίας: acc. pl. pred. after εἶναι, “to be prone to rupture”

ποιεῖ εἶναι: “causes them to be”

οὐ οἶόν τε (sc. ἐστίν): “for it is not possible” + inf.

διὰ χρόνου: “after some time”

γίνεσθαι: pr. inf. with acc. subj., “inflammations happen”

αἰμορροίας: acc. subj. of γίνεσθαι, “hemorrhoids are”

τριήκοντα ἐτέων: gen. of comparison, “to those younger than thirty years”

ἰσχυρὰς: acc. pred. of αἰμορροίας, “are severe”

τοῦ θέρους: gen. of time within which, “during the summer”

τὰ ἱερὰ νοσεύματα καλούμενα: “those illnesses called ‘sacred’” i.e. epilepsy

τοὺς ἀνθρώπους: acc. subj. of εἶναι, “such men are”

On Airs, Waters, and Places

έτέρων: τά τε ἔλκεα οὐ φλεγματώδεα ἐγγίνεσθαι, οὐδὲ ἀγριοῦσθαι: τά τε ἤθεα ἀγριώτερα ἢ ἡμερώτερα. τοῖσι μὲν ἀνδράσι ταῦτα τὰ νοσήματα ἐπιχώριά ἐστι: καὶ χωρὶς, ἣν τι πάγκοινον κατάσχη ἐκ μεταβολῆς τῶν ὡρέων: τῇσι δὲ γυναιξί, πρῶτον μὲν στρερίφαι πολλὰ γίνονται διὰ τὰ ὕδατα ἐόντα

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: wild, fierce	κατέχω: to hold fast
ἀγριοῦμαι: to be malignant	μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man	νόσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman	πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, epidemic
ἐγγίνομαι: to be born in	πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first
ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound, sore	στέριφος, -η, -ον: solid, barren
ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, local, endemic	φλεγματώδης, -ες: inflammatory, full of phlegm
ἦθος, -εος, τό: character	χωρὶς: separately, apart
ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, gentle	ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

έτέρων: gen. of comparison, “more likely than others”

τά ἔλκεα: acc. subj. of pr. mid. inf. ἐγγίνεσθαι, “sores break out”

ἀγριοῦσθαι: pr. inf., “nor do they become malignant”

καὶ χωρὶς: “and besides (the endemic diseases)…”

ἣν ... κατάσχη: ao. subj. of κατα-ἔχω in pr. gen. protatis, “if some epidemic disease prevails…”

πολλὰ (sc. γυναῖκες): “many women become”

διὰ τὰ ὕδατα ἐόντα: “because of the waters being”

-ευ- for -εο- in Present Participles

Contracted forms of -έω verbs are characteristic of Attic Greek. Ionic often leaves -εο- and -εε- combinations uncontracted; AWP follows the Attic convention in most verb forms, but note the diphthong -ευ- for -εο- in middle participles:

uncontracted	Attic contraction	Ionic contraction
καλεόμενα	καλούμενα	καλεύμενα
κυλινδεόμενον	κυλινδούμενον	κυλινδεύμενον
ἐνθυμέμενος	ἐνθυμούμενος	ἐνθυμέμενος
ἐννοέμενος	ἐννοούμενος	ἐννοέμενος
σκοπεόμενος	σκοπούμενος	σκοπεύμενος
ἰκνεόμενον	ἰκνουμένον	ἰκνευμένον
πινεόμενων	πινουμένων	πινευμένων

Note also ἀφικνεῦνται for ἀφικνοῦνται; and διουρεῦσι for διουροῦσι.

Hippocrates

σκληρά τε καὶ ἀτέραμνα καὶ ψυχρά: αἱ γὰρ καθάρσιες οὐκ ἐπιγίνονται τῶν ἐπιμηνίων ἐπιτήδειαι, ἀλλὰ ὀλίγαι καὶ πονηραί. ἔπειτα τίκτουσι χαλεπῶς: ἐκτιτρώσκουσί δὲ οὐ σφόδρα. ὁκόταν δὲ τέκωσι, τὰ παιδιά ἀδύνατοι τρέφειν εἰσί: τὸ γὰρ γάλα ἀποσβέννυται ἀπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων τῆς σκληρότητος καὶ ἀτεραμνίης: φθίσιές τε γίνονται συχναὶ ἀπὸ τῶν τοκετῶν: ὑπὸ γὰρ βίης ῥήγματα ἴσχουσι καὶ σπάσματα. τοῖσι δὲ παιδίοισιν ὕδρωπες ἐγγίνονται ἐν τοῖσιν ὄρχεσιν, ἕως σμικρὰ ῆ: ἔπειτα, προϊούσης τῆς ἡλικίης ἀφανίζονται: ἡβῶσί τε ὀψὲ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει.

ἀδύνατος, -ον: unable
 ἀποσβέννυμι: to be extinguished, cease
 ἀτεραμνίη, ῆ: harshness
 ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened
 ἀφανίζομαι: to disappear
 βίη, ῆ: strength, force, violence
 γάλα, γάλακτος, τό: milk
 ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place, happen
 ἐκτιτρώσκω: to bring forth untimely, miscarry
 ἔπειτα: thereupon
 ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall
 ἐπιμήνιος, -ον: monthly
 ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: suitable, fit, healthy
 ἕως: while, until (+ subj.)
 ἡβάω: to reach puberty
 ἡλικία, ῆ: time of life, age
 ἴσχω: to check
 κάθαρσις, -ιος, ῆ: a cleansing, evacuation

μικρός, -ή, -όν: small, little
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: scanty, small
 ὄρχις, -ιος, ό: testicle
 ὀψέ: after a long time, late
 παῖδιον, τό: a young child
 πονηρός, -ή, -όν: toilsome, painful, grievous
 προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
 ῥήγμα, -ατος, τό: a breakage, rupture
 σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
 σκληρότης, -ητος, ῆ: hardness
 σπάσμα, -ατος, τό: a spasm, strain
 συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, (pl.) many, frequent
 σφόδρα: very, much
 τίκτω: to bear children
 τοκετός, ό: a birth, delivery
 τρέφω: to nurse
 ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ό: dropsy
 φθίσις, -ιος, ῆ: emaciation, consumption
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: painful, difficult
 ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold

αἱ καθάρσιες τῶν ἐπιμηνίων: i.e. menstruation
 τέκωσι: ao. subj. in indef. cl., "wherever they give birth"
 τρέφειν: epex. inf. after ἀδύνατοι, "they are unable to nurse"
 τὸ γάλα: "breast milk"
 ὑπὸ βίης (sc. τῶν τοκετῶν): "from the violence (of the births)"
 ἕως ῆ: 3 s. subj. of εἰμί with n. pl. subject (sc. τὰ παιδιά), "while they are small"
 προϊούσης: pr. part. f. of προ-ἔρχομαι in gen. abs., "with age advancing"

On Airs, Waters, and Places

The effects of a city being oriented towards the east.

[5.] *περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν θερμῶν πνευμάτων καὶ τῶν ψυχρῶν καὶ τῶν πολίων τούτων ὧδε ἔχει ὡς προεῖρηται. ὁκόσαι δὲ κέονται πρὸς τὰ πνεύματα τὰ μεταξὺ τῶν θερινῶν ἀνατολέων τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῶν χειμερινῶν, καὶ ὁκόσαι τὸ ἐναντίον τούτων, ὧδε ἔχει περὶ αὐτῶν. ὁκόσαι μὲν πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολὰς τοῦ ἡλίου κέονται, ταύτας εἰκὸς εἶναι ὑγιεινοτέρας τῶν πρὸς τὰς ἄρκτους ἐστραμμένων καὶ τῶν πρὸς τὰ θερμὰ, ἣν καὶ στάδιον τὸ μεταξὺ ἦ. πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ μετριώτερον ἔχει τὸ θερμὸν καὶ τὸ ψυχρόν. ἔπειτα τὰ ὕδατα, ὁκόσαι πρὸς τὰς τοῦ ἡλίου ἀνατολὰς ἐστί, ταῦτα λαμπρά τε εἶναι ἀνάγκη καὶ*

ἀνάγκη, ἦ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀνατολή, ἦ: a rising, rise
ἄρκτος, ἦ: the north
εἰκός: likely
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite (+ gen.)
ἔπειτα: thereupon
θερινός, -ή, -όν: of the summer, in summer
θερμόν, τό: heat
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
κεῖμαι: to be laid, be positioned
λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear

μεταξύ: between
μέτριος, -η, -ον: within measure, moderate
προλέγω: to say before
στάδιον, τό: a stade
στρέφω: to turn
ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy
χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of the winter, in winter
ψυχρόν, τό: cold
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

προεῖρηται: perf. pass. of *προ-λέγω*, “it is as it has been said”

ὁκόσαι (sc. *πολεῖς*): “whatever cities”

μεταξὺ...χειμερινῶν: “between the summer and winter risings of the sun,” roughly ENE to ESE. See p. 14

ὧδε ἔχει: “concerning these, it is so (i.e. as follows)”

εἰκὸς εἶναι: “it is likely that these are”

τῶν ἐστραμμένων: pf. part. of *στρέφω*, gen. of comparison after *ὑγιεινοτέρας*, “healthier than those turned”

ἣν καὶ ἦ: pr. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “even if the distance between is”

πρότερον: “in the first case”

μετριώτερον ἔχει: “they are milder”

εἶναι ἀνάγκη: “these (waters) must be clear”

Hippocrates

εὐώδεα καὶ μαλακὰ καὶ ἐρατεινὰ ἐγγίνεσθαι ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ πόλει. ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος καθαίρει ἀνίσχων καὶ καταλάμπων· τὸ γὰρ ἐωθινὸν ἐκάστοτε αὐτὰ ὁ ἥρ ἐπέχει ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ. τά τε εἶδεα τῶν ἀνθρώπων εὐχροά τε καὶ ἀνθηρὰ ἐστὶ μᾶλλον ἢ ἄλλῃ, ἣν μὴ τις νοῦσος κωλύῃ. λαμπρόφωνοί τε οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ὀργὴν τε καὶ σύνεσιν βελτίους εἰσὶ τῶν πρὸς βορείων, ἥ περ καὶ τὰ ἄλλα τὰ ἐμφυόμενα ἀμείνω ἐστίν. ἔοικέ τε μάλιστα ἡ οὕτω κειμένη πόλις ἡρι κατὰ τὴν μετριότητα τοῦ θερμοῦ καὶ

ἀμείνων, -ον: better, abler, stronger	ἥ περ: just as
ἀνθηρός, -ή, -όν: flowering, blooming	ἥρ, ἥρος, τό: spring
ἀνίσχω: to hold up, rise	θερμόν, τό: warmth
αὐτόσε: thither, to the very place	καθαίρω: to purify
βελτίων, -ον: better	καταλάμπω: to shine upon
ἐγγίνομαι: to be born in	κείμαι: to be laid, be positioned
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure	κωλύω: to hinder, prevent
ἐκάστοτε: each time, on each occasion	λαμπρόφωνος, -ον: clear-voiced
ἐμφύω: to implant, (pass.) to grow in	μαλακός, -ή, -όν: soft
ἔοικε: it is like	μετριότης, -ητος, ἡ: moderation
ἐπιχέω: to pour water over	νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
ἐρατεινός, -ή, -όν: lovely, delightful	ὀργή, ἡ: a temperament, disposition,
εὐχρoος, -ον: well-colored, of healthy complexion	nature
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant	προσβόρειος, -ον: exposed to the north wind
ἐωθινός, -ή, -όν: in the morning, early	σύνεσις, -ιος, ἡ: a coming together, intelligence
ἥρ, ἥρος, ὁ: air	

ἐγγίνεσθαι: also complementing ἀνάγκη
 ἀνίσχων καὶ καταλάμπων: pr. part. instr., “by rising and shining on”
 τὸ ἐωθινόν: adv. acc., “in the morning”
 αὐτὰ: acc. pl. obj. of ἐπέχει, “the air holds *them* in check” i.e. the waters, or the vapors rising from the waters
 ἄλλῃ: dat. of place where, “more than elsewhere”
 ἣν μὴ κωλύῃ: subj. in general protasis, “unless some sickness prevents (it)”
 ὀργὴν καὶ ξύνεσιν: acc. of respect, “they are better *in disposition and in intelligence*”
 τῶν πρὸς βορείων: gen. of comparison after βελτίους, “better than those exposed to the north wind”
 τὰ ἐμφυόμενα: pr. part. neut., “the other things growing there”
 κειμένη: pr. part modifying πόλις, “a city being situated in this way”
 ἡρι: dat. after ἔοικε, “a city...is like spring”

τοῦ ψυχροῦ: τὰ τε νοσεύματα ἐλάσσω μὲν γίνεται καὶ ἀσθενέστερα, ἔοικε δὲ τοῖσιν ἐν τῇσι πόλεσι γενομένοις νοσεύμασι, τῇσι πρὸς τὰ θερμὰ πνεύματα ἐστραμμένῃσιν. αἱ τε γυναῖκες αὐτόθι ἀρικούμονές εἰσι σφόδρα καὶ τίκτουσι ῥῆϊδίως.

The effects of a city being oriented towards the west.

[6] περὶ μὲν τούτων ὧδε ἔχει. ὁκόσαι δὲ πρὸς τὰς δύσιας κεῖνται, καὶ αὐτῇσιν ἐστὶ σκέπη τῶν πνευμάτων τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς ἡοῦς πνεόντων, τὰ τε θερμὰ πνεύματα παραρρεῖ καὶ τὰ ψυχρὰ ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρκτων, ἀνάγκη ταύτας τὰς πόλεις θέσιν κεῖσθαι νοσερωτάτην: πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ τὰ ὕδατα οὐ λαμπρά:

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀρικούμων, -ονος: prolific
ἄρκτος, ἡ: the north
ἀσθενής, -ές: without strength, weak
αὐτόθι: there
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
δύσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting (of the sun)
ἐλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less
ἔοικε: it is like
ἡώς, ἡοῦς, ἡ: the east
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
θέσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting, position
κεῖμαι: to be laid, be situated

λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear
νοσερός, -ή, -όν: sickly, unhealthy
νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness, disease
παραρρέω: to flow past
πνέω: to blow
ῥῆϊδίως: easily, readily
σκέπη, ἡ: a covering, shelter, protection
στρέφω: to turn
σφόδρα: very, much
τίκτω: to bear children
ψυχρόν, τό: cold
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

ἐλάσσω: n. acc. pl. contracted (= ἐλάσσονα), “the diseases are fewer”

γενομένοις νοσεύμασι: dat. after ἔοικε, “the diseases are similar to the diseases occurring...”

ἐστραμμένῃσιν: dat. pl. perf. pass. part. of στρέφω, “similar to those turned...”

ὧδε ἔχει: “it is so” (in such cities)

καὶ αὐτῇσιν: dat. pl., “also to these cities”

τῶν πνευμάτων: gen. of separation after σκέπη, “shelter from the winds”

κεῖσθαι: inf. after ἀνάγκη, “it must be that these cities are situated”

θέσιν νοσερωτάτην: cogn. acc. with κεῖσθαι, “these cities are situated in a most unhealthy position”

Hippocrates

αἴτιον δὲ, ὅτι ὁ ἡὴρ τὸ ἑωθινὸν κατέχει ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺν, ὅστις τῷ ὕδατι ἐγκαταμιγνύμενος τὸ λαμπρὸν ἀφανίζει: ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος πρὶν ἄνω ἀρθῆναι οὐκ ἐπιλάμπει. τοῦ δὲ θέρεος, ἔωθεν μὲν αὔραι ψυχραὶ πνέουσι, καὶ δρόσοι πίπτουσι: τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν ἥλιος ἐγκαταδύνων ὥστε μάλιστα διέψει τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, διὸ καὶ ἀχρόους τε εἰκὸς εἶναι καὶ ἀρρώστους, τῶν τε νοσευμάτων πάντων μετέχειν μέρος τῶν προειρημένων: οὐδὲν γάρ αὐτοῖς ἀποκέκριται. βαρυφώνους τε εἰκὸς εἶναι καὶ βραγχώδεας διὰ

αἶρω: to raise, lift up

αἴτιον, τό: a cause

ἄνω: upwards, high

ἀποκρίνω: to set apart, distinguish

ἄρρωστος, -ον: weak, sickly

αὔρα, ἡ: a breeze

ἀφανίζω: to hide, conceal, remove

ἄχρους, -ον: colorless, pale

βαρυφώνος, -ον: gruff-voiced

βραγχώδης, -ες: subject to hoarseness

διέψω: to scorch thoroughly

διό: wherefore, for which reason

δρόσος, ἡ: dew

ἐγκαταδύνω: sink beneath

ἐγκαταμίγνυμι: to mix up in

εἰκός: likely

ἐπιλάμπω: to shine upon

ἔωθεν: from morning, at dawn

ἑωθινός, -ή, -όν: in the morning, early

ἡὴρ, ἡέρος, ὁ: air

θέρος, -εος, τό: summer

κατέχω: to hold fast

λαμπρόν, τό: clarity

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share

μετέχω: to share in, take part in

νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness, disease

πίπτω: to fall

πνέω: to blow

πρίν: before (+ inf.)

προλέγω: to say before

ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

τὸ ἑωθινόν: acc. of duration, “during the morning”

ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺν: “generally”

ἐγκαταμιγνύμενος: pr. part. of *εν-κατα-μίγνυμι*, “which, being mixed up in the water”

πρὶν ἀρθῆναι: ao. pass. inf. of *αἶρω*, “before it is raised high”

τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, “during the summer”

τὸ λοιπόν: acc. of extent of time, “for the rest (of the day)”

ὥστε διέψει: pr. inf. in res. cl., “so that it scorches”

μετέχειν: after *εἰκός*, “it is likely that they share in”

προειρημένων: perf. pass. part. of *προ-λέγω*, “of all the aforementioned diseases”

αὐτοῖς: dat. of advantage, “none are set apart for them” i.e. they suffer from no unique endemic diseases.

ἀποκέκριται: perf. pass. of *ἀποκρίνω*, “none is distinguished”

τὸν ἡέρα, ὅτι ἀκάθαρτος ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ αὐτόθι γίνεται καὶ νοσώδης: οὔτε γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν βορείων ἐκκρίνεται σφόδρα: οὐ γὰρ προσέχουσι τὰ πνεύματα: ἃ τε προσέχουσιν αὐτοῖσι καὶ πρόσκεινται, ὕδατεινότατά ἐστιν: ἐπεὶ τοιαῦτα τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐσπέρης πνεύματα: ἔοικέν τε μετοπώρῳ μάλιστα ἢ θέσις ἢ τοιαύτη τῆς πόλιος κατὰ τὰς τῆς ἡμέρης μεταβολὰς, ὅτι πολὺ τὸ μέσον γίνεται τοῦ τε ἑωθिनοῦ καὶ τοῦ πρὸς τὴν δειλὴν.

The effects of water from different sources: marshy, rocky and flowing from high hills.

[7.] περὶ μὲν πνευμάτων, ἃ τέ ἐστιν ἐπιτήδεια καὶ ἀνεπιτήδεια, ὧδε ἔχει. περὶ δὲ τῶν λοιπῶν ὑδάτων βούλομαι διηγῆσασθαι, ἃ τέ ἐστι νοσώδεα, καὶ ἃ ὑγιεινότατα, καὶ ὀκόσα

ἀκάθαρτος, -ον: unclean, impure
ἀνεπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: unserviceable, unfit
αὐτόθι: there
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern
βούλομαι: to wish
δειλὴ, ἡ: afternoon
διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe
ἐκκρίνω: to separate, clear
ἔοικε: it is like, is similar to (+ dat.)
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: suitable, convenient
ἐσπέρη, ἡ: evening
ἑωθινός, -ή, -όν: in the morning, early
ἡήρ, ἡέρος, ὁ: air

ἡμέρη, ἡ: day
θέσις, -ιος, ἡ: a situation, placement
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
μετοπώρον, τό: autumn
νοσώδης, -ες: sickly, unhealthy
προσέχω: to hold to, attach to
πρόσκειμαι: to be laid upon
σφόδρα: very, much
ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: wholesome, healthy
ὕδατεινός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist
ὧδε: so, thus

ὅτι γίνεται: "because it is"

ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ: "generally"

ἐκκρίνεται: pr. pass. of ἐκκρίνω, "it (the air) is not cleared"

ἃ τε: "and (the winds) which do persist"

ἐπεὶ τοιαῦτα: "since such are the winds"

μετοπώρῳ: dat. after ἔοικεν, "the situation is similar to autumn"

πολὺ: pred., "the middle is much" i.e. the disparity between the two extremes is great

ἃ: n. pl. rel. pronoun, "the winds, which are..."

ὧδε ἔχει: "it is so"

διηγῆσασθαι: ao. inf. of δια-ηγέομαι after βούλομαι

ἃ: n. pl. rel. pronoun, "the waters, which are..."

Hippocrates

ἀφ' ὕδατος κακὰ εἰκὸς γίνεσθαι, καὶ ὅσα ἀγαθὰ: πλείστον γὰρ μέρος συμβάλλεται ἐς τὴν ὑγιείην. ὁκόσα μὲν οὖν ἐστὶν ἐλώδεα καὶ στάσιμα καὶ λιμναῖα, ταῦτα ἀνάγκη τοῦ μὲν θέρεος εἶναι θερμὰ καὶ παχέα καὶ ὀδμὴν ἔχοντα, ἅτε οὐκ ἀπόρρυτα ἐόντα: ἀλλὰ τοῦ τε ὀμβρίου ὕδατος ἐπιφερομένου αἰεὶ νέου, τοῦ τε ἡλίου καίοντος, ἀνάγκη ἄχροά τε εἶναι καὶ πονηρὰ καὶ χολώδεα: τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος, παγετώδεά τε καὶ ψυχρὰ καὶ τεθολωμένα ὑπὸ τε χιόνος καὶ παγετῶν, ὥστε φλεγματοδέστατα εἶναι καὶ βραγχωδέστατα: τοῖσι δὲ πίνουσι σπλήνας μὲν αἰεὶ μεγάλους εἶναι καὶ μεμνωμένους, καὶ τὰς

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
αἰεὶ: always, forever
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀπόρρυτος, -ον: running, flowing
ἄχρους, -ον: colorless, pallid, of a bad color
βραγχώδης, -ες: subject to hoarseness
εἰκός: likely
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy
ἐπιφέρομαι: to supply
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
θολώω: to make turbid
καίω: to burn, heat
κακός, -ή, -όν: bad
λιμναῖος, -η, -ον: stagnant
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
μυώω: to make muscular

νέος, νέη, νέον: young, fresh
ὀδμή, ἡ: a smell, odor
ὀμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain
παγετός, ὁ: frost
παγετώδης, -ες: frosty, icy
παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick
πίνω: to drink
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest, greatest
πονηρός, -ή, -όν: bad, injurious
σπλήν, ὁ: a spleen
στάσιμος, -η, -ον: standing, stationary
συμβάλλω: to throw together, contribute
ὑγιείη, ἡ: health, soundness
φλεγματοδής, -ες: phlegmatic
χειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow
χολώδης, -ες: bilious, like bile
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

εἰκὸς (sc. ἐστι): “are likely to” + inf.

πλείστον μέρος: acc. dir. obj. of συμβάλλεται, “for (waters) contribute the greatest part to health”

τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, “during the summer”

ἅτε ἐόντα: causal, “because they are not...”

τοῦ ὀμβρίου...νέου: gen. abs., “with fresh rain water always being supplied”

τοῦ ἡλίου καίοντος: gen. abs., “with the sun heating”

τοῦ χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, “in the winter”

τεθολωμένα: perf. part. pas., “having been stirred up”

ὥστε .. εἶναι: result cl., “so that they are”

πίνουσι: pr. part. dat. of πίνω, “to those drinking”

σπλήνας εἶναι: inf. with acc. subj., “their spleens are”

μεμνωμένους: perf. part. pas. pred., “having become muscular”

Superlative and Comparative Adjectives

AWP is full of superlatives--the driest, the wettest, the best, the worst--and comparatives. In the glossaries, only the positive forms have been given for adjectives whose comparative and superlative forms are predictable from the stem.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ὕδατεινός: wet		ὕδατεινότατα
ὕγιεινός: healthy		ὕγιεινότατα
φλεγματώδης: phlegmatic		φλεγματωδέστατα
θανατώδης: deadly		θανατωδέστατοι
ἐπιτήδειος: fit, suitable		ἐπιτηδειότατον
θολώδης: muddy, turbid		θολωδέστατον
φαῦλος: low, bad		φauλότατα
γλυκύς: sweet		γλυκύτατα
κοῦφος: light		κουφότατα
λαμπρός: bright, clear	λαμπρότερα	λαμπρότατα
βαρύς: heavy		βαρύτατον
πονηρός: painful		πονηρότατα
παχύς: thick		παχύτατον
ἰσχυρός: strong, mighty		ἰσχυρότατον
ἄτονος: flabby	ἄτονώτερα	
ἄγριος: wild, fierce	ἄγριώτερα	
ἥμερος: tame, gentle	ἡμερώτερα	
μέτριος: within measure	μετριώτερα	
ἀσθενής: weak	ἀσθενέστερα	
τρόφιμος: healthy	τροφιμώτερα	
θεῖος: divine	θειότερον	
ἀνθρώπινος: human	ἀνθρωπινώτερον	

Hippocrates

γαστέρας σκληράς τε καὶ λεπτὰς καὶ θερμὰς, τοὺς δὲ ὤμους καὶ τὰς κληΐδας καὶ τὸ πρόσωπον καταλελεπτύσθαι: ἐς γὰρ τὸν σπλῆνα αἱ σάρκες συντήκονται, διότι ἰσχυροὶ εἰσιν: ἐδωδούς τε εἶναι τοὺς τοιούτους καὶ διψηρούς: τὰς τε κοιλίας ξηροτάτας τε καὶ θερμοτάτας καὶ τὰς ἄνω καὶ τὰς κάτω ἔχειν, ὥστε τῶν φαρμάκων ἰσχυροτέρων δεῖσθαι. τοῦτο μὲν τὸ νόσημα αὐτοῖσι σύντροφόν ἐστι καὶ θέρεος καὶ χειμῶνος. πρὸς δὲ τούτοις οἱ ὕδρωπες πλείστοί τε γίνονται καὶ θανατωδέστατοι: τοῦ γὰρ θέρεος δυσεντερίαί τε πολλαὶ ἐμπίπτουσι καὶ διάρροιαί καὶ πυρετοὶ τεταρταῖοι πολυχρόνιοι:

ἄνω: up, upwards

γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: a belly, stomach

δέω: to lack

διάρροια, ἡ: diarrhea

διότι: for the reason that, since

διψηρός, -ή, -όν: drinking heavily

δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery

ἐδωδός, -όν: given to eating

ἐμπίπτω: to fall upon

θανατώδης, -ες: deadly, fatal

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

θέρος, -εος, τό: summer

ἰσχνός, -ή, -όν: lean, meager

ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty, powerful

καταλεπτύνω: to make very thin,
emaciate

κάτω: down, downwards

κλείς, κλειδός, ἡ: a clavicle, collar bone

κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels

λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin

νόσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease

ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πολυχρόνιος, -ον: long-lasting

πρόσωπον, τό: a face

πυρετός, ό: a burning heat, fever

σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh

σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard

σπλήν, ό: a spleen

συντήκω: to fuse together, consume

σύντροφος, -ον: habitual

τεταρταῖος, -η, -ον: every four days,
quartan (fever)

ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ό: dropsy

φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine

χειμών, -ῶνος, ό: winter

ὤμος, ό: a shoulder

καταλελεπτύσθαι: perf. inf. with acc. subj., “their shoulders are emaciated”

συντήκονται: pr. pas., “the flesh is absorbed into the spleen”

τοὺς τοιούτους: acc. subj. of εἶναι, “such people are”

τὰς κοιλίας: acc. subj. of ἔχειν, “their bowels are very dry”

καὶ τὰς ἄνω καὶ τὰς κάτω: “both the upper and lower bowels”

ὥστε δεῖσθαι: res. cl., “so that they need” + gen.

αὐτοῖσι: dat. of ref., “habitual for them”

θέρεος, χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, “both in summer and in winter”

πλείστοί, θανατωδέστατοι: super., “very frequent and very fatal”

τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, “during the summer”

ταῦτα δὲ τὰ νοσεύματα μηκυνθέντα τὰς τοιαύτας φύσεως ἐς ὕδρωπας καθίστησι καὶ ἀποκτείνει. ταῦτα μὲν αὐτοῖσι τοῦ θέρεος γίνεται: τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος, τοῖσι νεωτέροισι μὲν περιπλευμονίαι τε καὶ μανιώδεα νοσεύματα: τοῖσι δὲ πρεσβυτέροισι καῦσοι, διὰ τὴν τῆς κοιλίης σκληρότητα. τῇσι δὲ γυναιξὶν οἰδήματα ἐγγίνεται καὶ φλέγμα λευκόν: καὶ ἐν γαστρὶ ἰσχοῦσι μόλις, καὶ τίκτουσι χαλεπῶς: μεγάλα τε τὰ ἔμβρυα καὶ οἰδέοντα: ἔπειτα ἐν τῇσι τροφῇσι φθινώδεά τε καὶ πονηρὰ γίνεται: ἥ τε κάθαρσις τῇσι γυναιξὶν οὐκ ἐπιγίνεται χρηστὴ μετὰ τὸν τόκον. τοῖσι δὲ παιδίοισι κῆλαι ἐπιγίνονται

ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
 γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: a belly
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
 ἐγγίνομαι: to be born in
 ἔμβρυον, τό: a baby, infant
 ἐπιγίνομαι: to follow, come into being after
 θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
 ἰσχω: to hold, keep
 κάθαρσις, -ιος, ἡ: a cleansing, evacuation
 καθίστημι: to set down, dispose
 καῦσος, ό: a burning heat, fever
 κῆλη, ἡ: a hernia
 κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels
 λευκός, -ή, -όν: light, bright, white
 μανιώδης, -ες: like madness, marked by delirium
 μηκύνω: to lengthen, prolong, extend
 μόλις: scarcely
 νεώτερος, -η, -ον: younger
 νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness, disease

οἰδέω: to swell, be swollen
 οἰδημα, -ατος, τό: a swelling, tumor
 παῖδιον, τό: a young child
 περιπλευμονία, ἡ: inflammation of the lungs, pneumonia
 πονηρός, -ή, -όν: bad, sick, in a bad state
 πρεσβύτερος, -η, -ον: older
 σκληρότης, -ητος, ἡ: hardness
 τίκτω: to bear children
 τόκος, ό: a bringing forth, childbirth, parturition
 τροφή, ἡ: nourishment, food
 ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ό: dropsy
 φθινώδης, -ες: consumptive, emaciated
 φλέγμα, -ατος, τό: inflammation, phlegm (one of the four humors)
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, difficult
 χειμών, -ώνος, ό: winter
 χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good, pleasant

μηκυνθέντα: ao. pass. part., circumstantial, "these diseases, when prolonged..."
 ἐς ὕδρωπας καθίστησι: "these diseases dispose to dropsies such constitutions"
 τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, "during the summer"
 τοῦ χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, "during the winter"
 φλέγμα λευκόν: leucophlegmasia (λευκοφλεγματία), a state of dropsy
 ἐν γαστρὶ ἰσχοῦσι: "they hold in the belly" i.e. conceive
 ἐν τῇσι τροφῇσι: "in their nourishment" i.e. while nursing
 κάθαρσις μετὰ τὸν τόκον: referring to the lochia, or postpartum discharge.

Hippocrates

μάλιστα, καὶ τοῖσιν ἀνδράσι κίρσοι καὶ ἔλκεα ἐν τῇσι
κνήμησιν, ὥστε τὰς τοιαύτας φύσιαις οὐχ οἷόν τε μακροβίους
εἶναι, ἀλλὰ προγηράσκειν τοῦ χρόνου τοῦ ἰκνευμένου. ἔτι δὲ αἱ
γυναῖκες δοκέουσιν ἔχειν ἐν γαστρὶ, καὶ ὁκόταν ὁ τόκος ᾗ,
ἀφανίζεται τὸ πλήρωμα τῆς γαστροῦ: τοῦτο δὲ γίνεται ὁκόταν
ὑδροπιήσωσιν αἱ ὑστέραι. τὰ μὲν τοιαῦτα ὕδατα νομίζω
μοχθηρὰ εἶναι πρὸς ἅπαν χρῆμα: δεύτερα δὲ, ὅσων εἶεν αἱ
πηγαὶ ἐκ πετρώων: —σκληρὰ γὰρ ἀνάγκη εἶναι— ἢ ἐκ γῆς,
ὅκου θερμὰ ὕδατά ἐστιν, ἢ σίδηρος γίνεται, ἢ χαλκὸς, ἢ

ἀνάγκη, ᾗ: force, constraint, necessity

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man

ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole

ἀφανίζω: to disappear

γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: a belly

γῆ, ἡ: earth

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman

δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second

ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound, ulcer

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

ἰκνέομαι: to come, befit

κίρσος, ὁ: enlargement of the veins,
varicose vein

κνήμη, ἡ: a leg

μακρόβιος, -ον: long-lived

μοχθηρός, -ή, -όν: miserable, wretched

νομίζω: to hold, think, believe

ὁκόταν: whenever (+ subj.)

πέτρα, ἡ: a rock, a ledge or shelf of rock

πηγή, ἡ: a fount, source

πλήρωμα, -ατος, τό: a fullness

προγηράσκω: to grow old before

σίδηρος, ὁ: iron

σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard

τόκος, ὁ: a bringing forth, childbirth,
parturition

ὑδροπιέω: to accumulate fluid

ὑστέρα, ἡ: a womb

χαλκός, ὁ: copper

χρῆμα, -ατος: a thing that one uses,
purpose

χρόνος, ὁ: time

ὥστε οὐχ οἷόν τε (sc. εἶναι): res. cl., “so that it is not possible” + acc. + inf.

προγηράσκειν: also with ὥστε in res. cl., “so that they grow old”

τοῦ χρόνου τοῦ ἰκνευμένου: gen. after προ-γηράσκειν, “grow old before the
proper time”

ἔχειν ἐν γαστρὶ: “they appear to hold in the belly” i.e. to be pregnant

ὁκόταν ... ᾗ: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever the birth is”

ὁκόταν ὑδροπιήσωσιν: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever they accumulate
fluid”

εἶναι: inf. in ind. st. after νομίζω, “that such waters are useless”

πρὸς ἅπαν χρῆμα: “for every purpose”

δεύτερα: “second” (most miserable waters)

ὅσων εἶεν: pr. opt. in cond. rel. cl., “(those waters) whose springs are” i.e. “if their
spring are”

σίδηρος, χαλκός, etc.: mineral and metal deposits that affect the quality of water

ἄργυρος, ἢ χρυσός, ἢ θείον, ἢ στυπτηρίη, ἢ ἄσφαλτον, ἢ νίτρον: ταῦτα γὰρ πάντα ὑπὸ βίης γίνονται τοῦ θερμοῦ. οὐ τοίνυν οἶόν τε ἐκ τοιαύτης γῆς ὕδατα ἀγαθὰ γίνεσθαι, ἀλλὰ σκληρά τε καὶ καυσώδεα, διουρεῖσθαι τε χαλεπὰ καὶ πρὸς τὴν διαχώρησιν ἐναντία εἶναι. ἄριστα δὲ, ὁκόσα ἐκ μετεώρων χωρίων ῥεῖ καὶ λόφων γεηρῶν: αὐτά τε γὰρ ἐστὶ γλυκέα καὶ λευκὰ, καὶ τὸν οἶνον φέρειν ὀλίγον οἶά τέ ἐστι: τοῦ δὲ χειμῶνος θερμὰ γίνεται, τοῦ δὲ θέρεος ψυχρά: οὕτω γὰρ ἂν εἴη ἐκ βαθυτάτων πηγέων. μάλιστα δὲ ἐπαινέω, ὧν τὰ ρεύματα πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολὰς τοῦ ἡλίου ἐρρώγασιν, καὶ μᾶλλον πρὸς τὰς

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising, rise
ἄργυρος, ὁ: silver
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best
ἄσφαλτος, ἡ: asphalt, bitumen
βαθύς, -εῖα, -ύ: deep
βίη, ἡ: force, power, violence
γεηρός, -όν: of earth, earthy
γλυκύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet
διαχώρησις, -ιος, ἡ: excretion
διουρέω: to pass in urine
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite, contrary
ἐπαινέω: to approve, commend
θείον, τό: sulfur
θερμόν, τό: heat
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
καυσώδης, -ες: suffering from heat, parched
λευκός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear

λόφος, ὁ: a hill
μετέωρος, -ον: raised, high
νίτρον, τό: soda
οἶνος, ὁ: wine
οἶός τε εἰμι: I am able
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
πηγή, ἡ: a fount, source, spring
ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a flow, stream, current
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream
ρήγνυμι: to break
σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
στυπτηρίη, ἡ: alum, vitriol
φέρειν: to bear
χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, difficult
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
χρυσός, ὁ: gold
χωρίον, τό: a place, spot
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

οὐ οἶόν τε (sc. ἐστίν)...γίνεσθαι: “it is not possible for good water to occur”
διουρεῖσθαι: expegetical inf. after χαλεπὰ, “(waters) difficult to be passed in urine”

εἶναι: inf. with acc. subj., “but (the waters) are hard, etc.”

ἄριστα (sc. ὕδατα): “but the best waters”

οἶά τέ ἐστι: “they are able to” + inf.

τοῦ χειμῶνος, τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, “during the winter, during the summer”

ἂν εἴη: pr. opt. pot., “they would be so (since they are) from...”

ἐρρώγασιν: perf. 3 pl. of ῥήγνυμι, “whose flows have broken”

καὶ μᾶλλον: “and even more so”

Hippocrates

θερινάς: ἀνάγκη γὰρ λαμπρότερα εἶναι καὶ εὐώδεα καὶ κοῦφα.
 ὁκόσα δέ ἐστιν ἀλυκὰ καὶ ἀτέραμνα καὶ σκληρὰ, ταῦτα μὲν
 πάντα πίνειν οὐκ ἀγαθὰ. εἰσὶ δ' ἔνιαι φύσεις καὶ νοσεύματα, ἐς
 ᾧ ἐπιτήδειά ἐστι τὰ τοιαῦτα ὕδατα πινόμενα, περὶ ὧν φράσω
 αὐτίκα.

The situation of water sources affects their qualities.

ἔχει δὲ καὶ περὶ τούτων ὥδε: ὁκόσων μὲν αἱ πηγαὶ πρὸς
 τὰς ἀνατολὰς ἔχουσι, ταῦτα μὲν ἄριστα αὐτὰ ἐωυτέων ἐστίν:
 δεύτερα δὲ τὰ μεταξὺ τῶν θερινῶν ἀνατολέων ἐστὶ τοῦ ἡλίου
 καὶ δυσίων, καὶ μᾶλλον τὰ πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολὰς: τρίτα δὲ τὰ
 μεταξὺ τῶν δυσμέων τῶν θερινῶν καὶ τῶν χειμερινῶν:

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good	εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
ἀλυκός, -ή, -όν: salt	θερινός, -ή, -όν: of the summer, in summer
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity	κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising	λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best	μεταξύ: between (+ gen.)
ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened	νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness, disease
αὐτίκα: straightway, at once	πηγή, ἡ: a fount, source, spring
δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second	πίνω: to drink
δύσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting (of the sun)	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
δυσμή, ἡ: setting	τρίτος, -η, -ον: third
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some	φράζω: to point out, show, indicate
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: fit, suitable, convenient	χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of winter, in winter

πίνειν: expegetic inf. with ἀγαθὰ, “these are not good to drink”

ἐς ᾧ: rel. pron. n. pl., “constitutions and illnesses, for which”

πινόμενα: pr. part. pass., circumstantial, “such waters, when they are drunk”

περὶ ὧν: rel. pron. gen. pl., “such waters, about which I will indicate”

ἔχει ὥδε: “and concerning these it is so (as follows)”

πρὸς τὰς ἀνατολὰς: “towards the risings,” i.e. eastwards

ταῦτα μὲν ἄριστα ... δεύτερα δὲ: “while the best are ... second best are...”

καὶ μᾶλλον: “and especially”

φαυλότατα δὲ τὰ πρὸς τὸν νότον καὶ τὰ μεταξὺ χειμερινῆς ἀνατολῆς καὶ δύσιος. καὶ ταῦτα τοῖσι μὲν νοτίοισι πάννυον, τοῖσι δὲ βορείοιςιν ἀμείνω. τούτοιςιν δὲ πρέπει ὥδε χρῆσθαι: ὅστις μὲν ὑγιαίνει τε καὶ ἔρρωται, μηδὲν διακρίνειν, ἀλλὰ πίνειν αἰεὶ τὸ παρεόν. ὅστις δὲ νοῦσον εἵνεκα βούλεται τὸ ἐπιτηδειότατον πίνειν, ὥδε ἂν ποιέων μάλιστα τυγχάνοι τῆς ὑγιείης: ὁκόσων μὲν αἱ κοιλίαι σκληραὶ εἰσι, καὶ συγκαίειν ἀγαθαί, τοῦτοιςιν μὲν τὰ γλυκύτατα συμφέρεει καὶ κουφότατα

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good	πάννυον: altogether, entirely
ἀμείνων, -ον: better, abler	πάρεμι: to be near, be present
ἀνατολή: a rising, rise	πίνω: to drink
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern	ποιέω: to make, do
βούλομαι: to wish	πονηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous
γλυκύς, -εῖα, ὕ: sweet	πρέπω: to befit, suit
διακρίνω: to separate, distinguish	ρῶννυμι: to strengthen, make strong
δύσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting (of the sun)	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
εἵνεκα: on account of, because of (+ gen.)	συγκαίω: to burn up, inflame
ἐπιτηδειός, -η, -ον: fit, suitable, convenient	συμφέρω: to bring together, contribute, be useful
κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels	τυγχάνω: to hit, obtain (+ gen.)
κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light	ὑγιαίνω: to be healthy
μεταξύ: between (+ gen.)	ὑγιείη, ἡ: health, soundness
νότιος, -η, -ον: southern	φᾶλος, -η, -ον: low, bad
νότος, ὁ: the south	χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of or in winter
νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease	χρέομαι: to use (+ dat.)

ἀμείνω: n. pl. nom. contracted (= ἀμείνονα), “those to the north are better”
τούτοιςιν: dat. of ref. with *πρέπει*, “it is fitting for these (waters)”
χρῆσθαι: pr. inf. epex., “it is fitting for them to be used in this way”
ἔρρωται: perf. pass. *ρῶννυμι* with present sense, “whoever has been strengthened” i.e. is now strong
διακρίνειν: (sc. *δύναται*) “is able to differentiate (between beneficial and harmful waters)”
τὸ παρεόν (sc. *ὕδωρ*): “the water being present” i.e. whatever water is at hand
νοῦσον εἵνεκα: “owing to an illness”
ποιέων: pr. part. cond., “if he were to do”
ἂν τυγχάνοι: pr. opt. pot. of *τυγχάνω*, “whoever wishes to drink... would obtain...”
τῆς ὑγιείης: gen. with *τυγχάνοι*, “he would obtain health”
συγκαίειν: epexegetic inf. after ἀγαθαί, “easy to inflame”
τοῦτοιςιν μὲν ... τοῦτοιςιν δὲ: dat. of ref., “while to these... to those”
συμφέρεει: “are a benefit to” + dat.

Hippocrates

καὶ λαμπρότατα: ὁκόσων δὲ μαλθακαὶ αἱ νηδύες καὶ ὑγραὶ εἰσι καὶ φλεγματώδεις, τοῦτοισι δὲ τὰ σκληρότατα καὶ ἀτεραμνότατα καὶ τὰ ὑφαλικά: οὕτω γὰρ ἂν ξηραίνοιτο μάλιστα: ὁκόσα γὰρ ὕδατά ἐστιν ἔψειν ἄριστα καὶ τακερώτατα, ταῦτα καὶ τὴν κοιλίην διαλύειν εἰκὸς μάλιστα καὶ διατήκειν: ὁκόσα δὲ ἐστιν ἀτέραμνα καὶ σκληρὰ καὶ ἥκιστα ἐψανά, ταῦτα δὲ συνίστησι μᾶλλον τὰς κοιλίας καὶ ξηραίνει. ἀλλὰ γὰρ ψευσάμενοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἄνθρωποι τῶν ἀλμυρῶν ὑδάτων πέρι δι' ἀπειρίην, ὅτι νομίζεται διαχωρητικά: τὰ δὲ ἐναντιώτατά ἐστι πρὸς τὴν διαχώρησιν: ἀτέραμνα γὰρ καὶ ἀνέψανα, ὥστε καὶ τὴν κοιλίην ὑπ' αὐτῶν στύφεσθαι μᾶλλον ἢ τήκεσθαι.

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good	λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear
ἀλμυρός, -ή, -όν: salt, briny	μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft
ἀνέψανος, -ον: bad for cooking	νηδύς, -ύος, ἡ: stomach, (pl.) bowels
ἀπειρίη, ἡ: inexperience, ignorance	νομίζω: to hold, think, believe
ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened	ξηραίνω: to parch, dry up
διαλύω: to loosen	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
διατήκω: to melt, soften, relax	στύφω: to draw together, constrict
διαχώρησις, -ιος, ἡ: excretion	συνίστημι: to set together, combine, bind
διαχωρητικός, -ή, -όν: laxative	τακερός, -ή, -όν: solvent, soft
εἰκός: likely	τήκω: to melt, relax
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite, contrary	ὑγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, running
ἐψανός, -η, -ον: boiled	ὑφαλικός, -ή, -όν: salted, salty
ἔψω: to boil	φλεγματώδης, -ες: inflammatory,
ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least	phlegmatic
κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels	ψεύδω: to cheat by lies, beguile

ἂν ξηραίνοιτο: pr. opt. pot., “for these would dry them up”

ἔψειν: epexegetic inf. with ἄριστα, “waters best for boiling”

διαλύειν καὶ διατήκειν: pr. inf. complementing εἰκὸς (sc. ἐστι), “these are likely to loosen and relax”

ψευσάμενοι εἰσὶν: pas. periphrastic, “men are deceived concerning salt waters”

ὑδάτων πέρι: anastrophe, “about waters”

νομίζεται: pr. pass., “they are believed to be”

ὥστε στύφεσθαι, τήκεσθαι: pass. inf. in result clause, “so the belly is constricted rather than relaxed”

On Airs, Waters, and Places

How rain is the very best source of water.

[8.] καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν πηγαίων ὑδάτων ὧδε ἔχει. περὶ δὲ τῶν ὀμβρίων καὶ ὁκόσα ἀπὸ χιόνος φράσω ὅκως ἔχει. τὰ μὲν οὖν ὀμβρία κουφότατα καὶ γλυκύτατά ἐστι καὶ λεπτότατα καὶ λαμπρότατα: τὴν τε γὰρ ἀρχὴν, ὃ ἥλιος ἀνάγει καὶ ἀναρπάζει τοῦ ὕδατος τό τε λεπτότατον καὶ κουφότατον: δῆλον δὲ οἱ ἅλεις ποιεῖουσιν: τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀλμυρὸν λείπεται αὐτοῦ ὑπὸ πάχεος καὶ βάρους, καὶ γίνεται ἅλεις: τὸ δὲ λεπτότατον ὃ ἥλιος ἀναρπάζει ὑπὸ κουφότητος: ἀνάγει δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτο οὐκ ἀπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων μόνον τῶν λιμναίων, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης, καὶ ἐξ ἀπάντων ἐν ὁκόσοις ὑγρόν τι ἐστίν: ἔνεστι δὲ ἐν παντὶ χρήματι: καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄγει τὸ

ἄγω: to lead, carry
 ἀλμυρός, -ή, -όν: salt, briny
 ἅλς, ἅλός, ὅ: salt
 ἀνάγω: to lead up, i.e. evaporate
 ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up
 ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: quite all, the whole
 βάρος, -εος, τό: weight
 γλυκύς, -εῖα, ύ: sweet
 δῆλος, -η, -ον: visible, evident
 θάλασσα, ἡ: the sea
 κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light
 κουφότης, -ητος, ἡ: lightness
 λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear

λείπω: to leave
 λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, fine, light
 λιμναῖον, τό: a pool, marsh
 μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only
 ὀμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain
 πάχος, -εος, τό: thickness
 πηγαῖος, -η, -ον: from a well or spring
 ποιέω: to make
 ὑγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, fluid
 φράζω: to point out, show, indicate
 χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow
 χρήμα, -ατος: a thing that one uses

τῶν ὀμβρίων (sc. ὑδάτων): "rain water"
 ὅκως ἔχει: "I will say how it is"
 τὴν ἀρχὴν: adverbial, "to begin with"
 δῆλον: "salt makes this evident"
 τὸ ἀλμυρὸν: "the brininess"
 ὑπὸ πάχεος: "because of its thickness"
 ἐν ὁκόσοις ὑγρόν τι ἐστίν: "from all things in which there is some moisture"
 ἔνεστι δὲ: "and (moisture) is in"
 ἐν παντὶ χρήματι: "in every object"
 αὐτῶν: intensive, "even from men"
 ἄγει: "(the sun) leads"

Hippocrates

λεπτότατον τῆς ἱκμάδος καὶ κουφότατον. τεκμήριον δὲ μέγιστον, ὅταν ἄνθρωπος ἐν ἡλίῳ βαδίζῃ, ἢ καθίζῃ ἱμάτιον ἔχων: ὁκόσα μὲν τοῦ χρωτὸς ὁ ἥλιος ἐφορᾷ, οὐχ ἰδρῶν ἄν: ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος ἀναρπάζει τὸ προφαινόμενον τοῦ ἰδρωτός· ὁκόσα δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἱματίου ἐσκέπασται, ἢ ὑπ' ἄλλου του, ἰδροῖ. ἐξάγεται μὲν γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ βιάζεται, σῶζεται δὲ ὑπὸ τῆς σκέπης, ὥστε μὴ ἀφανίζεσθαι ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου. ὁκόταν δὲ ἐς σκιὴν ἀφίκεται, ἅπαν τὸ σῶμα ὁμοίως διειῖ. οὐ γὰρ ἔτι ὁ ἥλιος ἐπιλάμπει. διὰ ταῦτα δὲ καὶ σήπεται τῶν ὑδάτων τάχιστα ταῦτα καὶ ὁδμὴν ἴσχει πονηρὴν τὸ ὄμβριον, ὅτι ἀπὸ

ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up	λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, light
ἀφανίζω: to make unseen, hide	ὄδμή, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive	ὄμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain
βαδίζω: to walk	ὁμοίως: similarly, alike
βιάζω: to force	ὅταν: whenever (+ subj.)
διίημι: to let pass through	πονηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, unpleasant
ἐξάγω: to lead out	προφαίνω: to bring forth, show
ἐπιλάμπω: to shine upon	σήπω: to make rotten, foul
ἐφοράω: to look on	σκεπάζω: to cover, shelter
ἰδρώς, -ῶτος, ὁ: sweat, perspiration	σκέπη, ἡ: a covering, shelter, protection
ἱκμάς, -άδος, ἡ: moisture, juice	σκιή, -ῆς, ἡ: a shadow, shade
ἱμάτιον, τό: a cloak	σῶζω: to save, keep
ἴσχω: to hold, keep	τάχιστα: very quickly
καθίζω: to make to sit down, seat	τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
κουφός, -η, -ον: light	χρῶς, χρωτός, ὁ: skin

ὅταν βαδίζῃ, καθίζῃ: pr. subj. in indef. temporal clause, “whenever a man walks... or sits”

ὁκόσα: acc. resp., “as for the parts”

ἰδρῶν ἄν: pr. opt. pot., “he would not sweat”

τὸ προφαινόμενον: “the appearing of sweat” i.e. as it is produced

ἐσκέπασται: perf. pass. of σκεπάζω, “what has been sheltered by the cloak”

ὑπ' ἄλλου του: “or by some other thing”

ὥστε μὴ ἀφανίζεσθαι: pr. inf. in result clause, “so that (the sweat) does not disappear”

ὁκόταν ... ἀφίκεται: ao. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever someone arrives”

διειῖ: pr. of δια-ίημι, “lets (sweat) pass through”

πονηρὴν: pred. acc., “an odor that is bad”

πλείστων συνήκται καὶ συμμέμικται, ὥστε σήπεσθαι τάχιστα.
 ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοισιν, ἐπειδὴν ἀρπασθῇ καὶ μετεωρισθῇ
 περιφερόμενον καὶ καταμεμιγμένον ἐς τὸν ἥερα, τὸ μὲν
 θολερὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ νυκτοειδὲς ἐκκρίνεται καὶ ἐξίσταται καὶ
 γίνεται ἡῆρ καὶ ὀμίχλη, τὸ δὲ λαμπρότατον καὶ κουφότατον

ἀρπάζω: to snatch away, carry off

ἐκκρίνω: to pick out, separate

ἐξίστημι: to put out of its place, to change
 or alter utterly

ἡῆρ, ἡέρος, ὄ: air

θολερός, -ή, -όν: foul, thick, turbid

καταμίγνυμι: to mix up, mingle

κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light

λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: clear

μετεωρίζω: to raise to a height

νυκτοειδής, -ές: like night, dark

ὀμίχλη, ἡ: a mist, fog

περιφέρω: to carry round

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

σήπω: to make rotten, foul

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

συνάγω: to bring together, collect

τάχιστα: very quickly

ξυνήκται: perf. pass of συν-ἄγω, “it has been gathered from many sources”

ξυμμέμικται: perf. pass. of συν-μίγνυμι, “it has been mixed together”

ὥστε σήπεσθαι: pass. inf. in result clause, “so it is fouled”

ἐπειδὴν ἀρπασθῇ, μετεωρισθῇ: ao. pass. subj. in indefinite temporal clause,
 “whenever (the water) has been carried off and has been raised up”

καταμεμιγμένον: perf. part., “and it has been thoroughly mixed”

τὸ θολερὸν (sc. μέρος) αὐτοῦ: “the foul (part) of it”

Neuter Adjectives for Abstract Nouns

The neuter singular of an adjective can be used with τὸ to create an abstract noun. AWP uses this frequently, sometimes where there is already a feminine abstract noun available. Here are some examples:

τὸ μὲν θολερὸν καὶ νυκτοειδὲς (muddiness and darkness)

τὸ μὲν αὐτέου λαμπρὸν καὶ κοῦφον καὶ γλυκὺν (its brightness and
 lightness and sweetness)

τὸ ἀνδρεῖον καὶ τὸ ταλαίπωρον καὶ τὸ ἔμπονον καὶ τὸ θυμοειδὲς
 (manliness and endurance and patience and spiritedness)

τὸ σφαιροειδὲς (roundness)

τό τε ἄγριον καὶ τὸ ἄμικτον (wildness and savagery)

τό τε ἄγριον καὶ τὸ θηριῶδες (wildness and brutality)

τὸ ὄμβριον (raininess)

τό τε ῥάθυμον καὶ τὸ ὑπνηρόν (carelessness and drowsiness)

τὸ ἄγρυπνον (wakefulness)

Hippocrates

αὐτοῦ λείπεται καὶ γλυκαίνεται ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου καίόμενόν τε καὶ ἐψόμενον: γίνεται δὲ καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα τὰ ἐψόμενα αἰεὶ γλυκέα. ἕως μὲν οὖν διεσκεδασμένον ἦ καὶ μήπω συνεστήκη, φέρεται μετέωρον. ὁκόταν δέ κου ἀθροισθῇ καὶ συστραφῇ ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ ὑπὸ ἀνέμων ἀλλήλοισιν ἐναντιωθέντων ἐξαίφνης, τότε καταρρήγνυται ἢ ἂν τύχῃ πλείστον συστραφέν. τότε γὰρ εἰκόδς τοῦτο μᾶλλον γίνεσθαι, ὁκόταν τὰ νέφεα, ὑπὸ ἀνέμου στάσιν μὴ ἔχοντος ὠρμημένα καὶ χωρέοντα, ἐξαίφνης

ἀθροίζω: to gather together	λείπω: to leave
αἰεὶ: always, forever	μετέωρος, -ον: raised, high
ἀλλήλων: one another	μήπω: not yet
ἄνεμος, ὁ: wind	νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
γλυκαίνω: to sweeten	ὁκόταν: whenever (+ subj.)
γλυκύς, -εῖα, ὕ: sweet	ὀρμάω: to set in motion, urge
διασκεδάννυμι: to scatter, disperse	πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
ἐναντιόομαι: to oppose, be adverse	στάσις, -ιος, ἡ: a standing, rest
ἐξαίφνης: suddenly	συνίστημι: to set together, combine, unite
εἰκόδς: likely (+ inf.)	συστρέφω: to form together, compress
ἔψω: to boil, cook	τότε: at that time, then
ἕως: until, while	τυγχάνω: to hit, happen upon
καίω: to light, heat	φέρω: to bear
καταρρήγνυμι: to break down, burst	χωρέω: to carry along

γλυκέα: pred. nom., “become sweet”

διεσκεδασμένον ἦ: periphrastic perf. subj. in gen. temporal clause, “when it is dispersed” we would expect **ἂν** after **ἕως**

συνεστήκη: perf. subj. of **συν-ἵστημι**, “it has not yet been combined” i.e. condensed

μετέωρον: adverbial, “it is carried aloft”

ὁκόταν ἀθροισθῇ, ξυστραφῇ: ao. pass. subj. in indefinite temporal clause, “whenever it is gathered together and compressed”

ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ: “compressed into the same place”

ἐναντιωθέντων: ao. part. of **ἐν-αντιόομαι**, “winds suddenly opposed”

ἢ ἂν τύχῃ: ao. subj. of **τυγχάνω** in indefinite clause, “whenever it happens” + part.

συστραφέν: ao. pass. part. n. nom. s. of **συν-τρέφω** with **τύχῃ**, “it happens to be compressed”

μὴ ἔχοντος: pr. part. gen. modifying **ἀνέμου**, with conditional force, “by a wind if it has no rest” i.e. a constant wind

ὠρμημένα: perf. part. n. pl., “the clouds, having been set in motion”

ἀντικόψῃ πνεῦμα ἐναντίον καὶ ἕτερα νέφεα. ἐνταῦθα τὸ μὲν
 πρῶτον αὐτοῦ συστρέφεται: τὰ δὲ ὀπισθεν ἐπιφέρεται τε καὶ
 οὕτω παχύνεται, καὶ μελαίνεται, καὶ συστρέφεται ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ,
 καὶ ὑπὸ βάρους καταρρήγνυται, καὶ ὄμβροι γίνονται. ταῦτα
 μὲν ἐστὶν ἄριστα κατὰ τὸ εἶκος: δεῖται δὲ ἀφέψεσθαι, καὶ
 ἀποσήπεσθαι: εἰ δὲ μὴ, ὁδμὴν ἴσχει πονηρὴν, καὶ βράγχος καὶ
 βῆχες καὶ βαρυφωνίη τοῖσι πίνουσι προσίσταται.

Water from snow and ice is not good.

τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ χιόνος καὶ κρυστάλλων πονηρὰ πάντα:
 ὁκόταν γὰρ ἅπαξ παγῇ, οὐκ ἔτι ἐς τὴν ἀρχαίην φύσιν

ἀντικόπτω: to beat back, resist, oppose
 ἅπαξ: once
 ἀποσήπομαι: to throw off impurities,
 purify
 ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best
 ἀρχαῖος, -η, -ον: primary, original
 ἀφέψω: to refine by boiling
 βάρος, -εος, τό: weight
 βαρυφωνία, ἡ: a deepness of voice
 βῆξ, βῆχος, ὁ: cough
 βράγχος, ὁ: hoarseness
 δέω: to need, lack
 εἶκος: likely
 ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite, contrary
 ἐνταῦθα: there, then
 ἐπιφέρω: to bring upon
 ἔτι: yet, hereafter
 ἴσχω: to keep

καταρρήγνυμι: to break down, burst
 κρύσταλλος, ὁ: ice
 μελαίνω: to blacken, darken
 νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
 ὄδμή, ἡ: a smell, scent, odor
 ὁκόταν: whenever (+ subj.)
 ὄμβρος, ὁ: heavy rain
 ὀπισθεν: behind, at the back
 παχύνω: to thicken, fatten
 πήγνυμι: to make solid, freeze
 πίνω: to drink
 πονηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, injurious,
 unpleasant
 προσίστημι: to approach, occur to (+ dat.)
 πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first
 συστρέφω: to form together, compress
 χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow

ὁκόταν ... ἀντικόψῃ: ao. subj. of ἀντι-κόπτω in gen. temp. cl., “whenever clouds
 beat back”

τὸ πρῶτον αὐτοῦ: “the first part of it” i.e. the front of the cloud

τὰ ὀπισθεν: “the rear (of the cloud)”

ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ: “compressed into one place”

κατὰ τὸ εἶκος: “in all likelihood”

ἀφέψεσθαι, ἀποσήπεσθαι: compl. inf. with δεῖται, “they need to be refined and
 purified”

εἰ μὴ: protasis of simple condition, “and if they are not (refined and purified)…”

τοῖσι πίνουσι: pr. part. dat., “to those drinking it”

ὁκόταν παγῇ: ao. pass. subj. in indefinite temporal clause, “whenever it has been
 frozen once”

Hippocrates

καθίσταται, ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ λαμπρὸν καὶ κοῦφον καὶ γλυκὺ ἐκκρίνεται καὶ ἀφανίζεται, τὸ δὲ θολωδέστατον καὶ σταθμωδέστατον λείπεται. γνοίης δ' ἂν ὧδε: εἰ γὰρ βούλει, ὅταν ᾗ χειμῶν, ἐς ἀγγεῖον μέτρῳ ἐγχείας ὕδωρ, θεῖναι ἐς τὴν αἰθρίην, ἵνα πῆξεται μάλιστα, ἔπειτα τῇ ὑστεραίῃ ἐσενεγκὼν ἐς ἀλέην, ὅκου χαλάσει μάλιστα ὁ παγετὸς, ὁκόταν δὲ λυθῇ, ἀναμετρεῖν τὸ ὕδωρ, εὐρήσεις ἔλασσον συχνῶ. τοῦτο τεκμήριον, ὅτι ὑπὸ τῆς πῆξις ἀφανίζεται καὶ ἀναξηραίνεται

ἀγγεῖον, τό: vessel

αἰθρίη, ᾗ: open air

ἀλέη, ᾗ: a shelter, warmth

ἀναμετρέω: to re-measure

ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up

ἀφανίζω: to hide, (pass.) to disappear

βούλομαι: to will, wish

γιννώσκω: to perceive, mark, learn

γλυκὺς, -εῖα, ὕ: sweet

ἐγχείω: to pour in

ἐκκρίνω: to separate

ἐλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less

ἐσφέρω: to carry into

εὐρίσκω: to find

θολώδης, -ες: muddy, turbid

ἵνα: "where" (+ indic.)

καθίστημαι: to recover

κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light, nimble

λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear

λείπω: to leave

λύω: to loose

μέτρον, τό: a measure

παγετός, ὁ: frost, ice

πῆγνυμι: to make solid, freeze

πῆξις, -ιος, ᾗ: a fixing, freezing

σταθμώδης, -ες: full of sediment

συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much

τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof

τίθημι: to set, put, place

ὑστεραίος, -η, -ον: on the next day

χαλάω: to loosen, melt

χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter

ἐς καθίσταται: "returns into X state (acc)."

τὸ μὲν αὐτοῦ λαμπρὸν (sc. μέρος): "the bright (part) of it"

γνοίης: 2 s. aor. opt. potential with ἂν, "you may know in this way (as follows)"

βούλει: 2 s. pr. of βούλομαι, parenthetical, "if you wish"

ὅταν ᾗ: pr. subj. in indefinite temporal clause, "when it is winter"

μέτρῳ: dat. of measure, "into a vessel by a measured amount"

ἐγχείας: ao. part. nom. m. s., "having poured water into"

θεῖναι: ao. inf. of τίθημι, with imper. force, "place (it)!"

ἵνα πῆξεται: fut. indic., "where it will freeze best"

ἐσενεγκὼν: ao. part. m. s. of ἐς-φέρω, "having brought (it) in"

ὅκου χαλάσει: "where it will melt"

ὁκόταν λυθῇ: ao. pass. subj. in indef. temp. clause, "whenever it is melted"

ἀναμετρεῖν: inf. with imper. force, "measure!"

εὐρήσεις: 2 s. fut of εὐρίσκω, "you will discover"

συχνῶ: dat. of degree of diff. with ἔλασσον, "less by much"

τὸ κουφότατον καὶ λεπτότατον, οὐ τὸ βαρύτατον καὶ παχύτατον: οὐ γὰρ ἂν δύναίτο. ταύτῃ οὖν νομίζω πονηρότατα ταῦτα τὰ ὕδατα εἶναι τὰ ἀπὸ χιόνος καὶ κρυστάλλου, καὶ τὰ τοῦτοισιν ἐπόμενα πρὸς ἅπαντα χρήματα.

An account of the diseases that are the result of drinking bad water.

[9.] περὶ μὲν οὖν ὀμβρίων ὑδάτων καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ χιόνος καὶ κρυστάλλων οὕτως ἔχει. λιθιῶσι δὲ μάλιστα ἄνθρωποι, καὶ ὑπὸ νεφριτίδων καὶ στραγγουρίης ἀλίσκονται καὶ ἰσχιάδων, καὶ κῆλαι γίνονται, ὅκου ὕδατα πίνουνσι παντοδαπώτατα καὶ ἀπὸ ποταμῶν μεγάλων, ἐς οὓς ποταμοὶ ἕτεροι ἐμβάλλουσι, καὶ ἀπὸ λίμνης, ἐς ἣν ῥεύματα πολλὰ καὶ παντοδαπὰ ἀφικνεῦνται, καὶ ὁκόσοι ὕδασιν ἐπακτοῖσι

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, captured

ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole

ἀφικνέομαι: to come to

βαρύνς, -εῖα, -ύ: heavy

δύναμαι: to be able, capable

ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in

ἐπακτός, -ή, -όν: brought in, imported

ἐπομαι: to follow, attend

ἰσχιάς, -άδος, ἡ: sciatica, pain in the leg

κῆλη, ἡ: a tumor, rupture

κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light, nimble

κρύσταλλος, ὁ: ice

λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, light

λιθιάω: to suffer from kidney stones

λίμνη, ἡ: a pool, lake

νεφρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: nephritis, kidney disease

νομίζω: to hold, think, believe

ὄμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain

παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind, of all sorts

παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick

πίνω: to drink

πονηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, injurious

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a flow, stream, current

στραγγουρίη, ἡ: retention of urine, strangury

χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow

χρήμα, -ατος, τό: a thing that one uses

ἂν δύναίτο: potential opt., “for it is not possible (to do this)” i.e. to dry up the heavy portion of the water

ταύτῃ: dat., “for this reason”

τὰ ἐπόμενα: pr. part., “the ones following these” i.e. similar to these

πρὸς ἅπαντα χρήματα: “for all purposes”

οὕτως ἔχει: “it is so”

ἐς οὓς: rel. pron., “from rivers into which”

ἐς ἣν: rel. pron., “a pool into which”

ὕδασιν ἐπακτοῖσι: dat. with *χρέονται*, “they use imported waters”

Hippocrates

χρέονται διὰ μακροῦ ἀγομένοισι, καὶ μὴ ἐκ βραχείος. οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε ἕτερον ἑτέρῳ εἰκέναι ὕδωρ, ἀλλὰ τὰ μὲν γλυκέα εἶναι, τὰ δὲ ἀλυκὰ τε καὶ στυπτηριώδεα, τὰ δὲ ἀπὸ θερμῶν ρεῖν. συμμισγόμενα δὲ ταῦτα ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ ἀλλήλοισι στασιάζει, καὶ κρατεῖ αἰεὶ τὸ ἰσχυρότατον. ἰσχύει δὲ οὐκ αἰεὶ τὸ αὐτὸ, ἀλλ' ἄλλοτε ἄλλο κατὰ τὰ πνεύματα: τῷ μὲν γὰρ βορέης τὴν ἰσχὺν παρέχεται, τῷ δὲ ὁ νότος, καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν πέρι αὐτὸς λόγος. ὑφίστασθαι οὖν τοῖσι τοιούτοισιν ἀνάγκη ἐν τοῖς ἀγγείοις ἰλὺν

ἀγγεῖον, τό: vessel
 ἄγω: to lead, carry, bring
 αἰεὶ: always, for ever
 ἀλλήλων: one another
 ἄλλοτε: at other times
 ἀλυκός, -ή, -όν: salt, salty
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, necessity
 βορέης, -ου, ὁ: the north (wind)
 βραχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: short
 γλυκύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sweet
 εἰκα: to be like (+ dat.)
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
 ἰλύς, ἡ: mud, dirt
 ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty
 ἰσχύς, -ύος, ἡ: strength

ἰσχύω: to be strong, prevail
 κρατέω: to prevail
 λόγος, ὁ: a word, account
 λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
 μακρός, -ή, -όν: long
 νότος, ὁ: the south (wind)
 οἶον τε ἐστὶ: it is possible (+ inf.)
 παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
 ῥέω: to flow, run, stream
 στασιάζω: to disagree, be at odds
 στυπτηριώδης, -ες: containing alum
 συμμίσγνυμι: to mix together
 ὑφίστημι: to place or set under
 χρέομαι: to use (+ dat.)

διὰ μακροῦ: "over a great distance"
 ἀγομένοισι: pr. part. dat., "waters that are brought"
 οὐ οἶον (sc. ἐστὶ): "one water cannot" + inf.
 εἰκέναι: perf. inf., "to be similar" + dat.
 ἑτέρῳ: "to be similar to another"
 τὰ μὲν...τὰ δὲ: "some waters...others" acc. subj. of εἶναι and ρεῖν
 ἀπὸ θερμῶν (sc. πηγῶν): "some flow from hot springs"
 συμμισγόμενα: pr. part. n. pl. of συν-μίσγνυμι, circumstantial, "these, when they are mixed together..."
 ἐς τὸ αὐτὸ (=τὸ αὐτό): "into the same thing"
 κατὰ τὰ πνεύματα: "depending on the winds"
 τῷ μὲν...τῷ δὲ: "to one...to another"
 λοιπῶν πέρι: anastrophe, "about the others"
 αὐτὸς (= ὁ αὐτός): "the same account"
 ὑφίστασθαι: pr. inf. with ἀνάγκη, "it is necessary for X (dat.) to deposit"

καὶ ψάμμον· καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦτων πινευμένων τὰ νουσήματα γίνεται
τὰ προειρημένα· ὅτι δὲ οὐχ ἅπασιν, ἐξῆς φράσω.

Further considerations about the causes of problems of the bowels.

ὁκόσων μὲν ἢ τε κοιλίῃ εὐροός τε καὶ ὑγιερῇ ἐστι, καὶ
ἡ κύστις μὴ πυρετώδης, μηδὲ ὁ στόμαχος τῆς κύστιος
συμπέφρακται λίην, οὔτοι μὲν διουρεῦσι ῥηϊδίως, καὶ ἐν τῇ
κύστει οὐδὲν συστρέφεται· ὁκόσων δὲ ἂν ἡ κοιλίῃ πυρετώδης
ᾖ, ἀνάγκη καὶ τὴν κύστιν τῶντὸ πάσχειν· ὁκόταν γὰρ
θερμανθῇ μᾶλλον τῆς φύσιος, ἐφλέγμηνεν αὐτῆς ὁ στόμαχος·

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole
διουρέω: to pass urine
ἐξῆς: in order, in a row
εὐροός, -ον: flowing well
θερμαίνω: to warm, heat
κοιλίῃ, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels
κύστις, -ιος, ἡ: a bladder
λίην: very, exceedingly
νούσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease
πάσχω: to suffer

πίνω: to drink
προλέγω: to say before
πυρετώδης, -ες: feverish, hot
ῥηϊδίως: easily, readily
στόμαχος, ὁ: a mouth, opening
συμφράσσω: to press together, block up
συστρέφω: to form together, compress
ὑγιερός, -ή, -όν: wholesome, healthy
φλεγμαίνω: to be inflamed, be swollen
φράζω: to point out, show, indicate
ψάμμος, ἡ: sand

πινευμένων: pr. part. pass., “from these being drunk”

προειρημένα: perf. part. n. pl. of προ-λέγω, “the aforementioned diseases”

ἅπασιν: dat. of ref., “that it is not so for all”

ὁκόσων μὲν ... ὁκόσων δὲ: gen. pl., “of those whose... of others whose”

συμπέφρακται: perf. of συν-φράσσω, “the opening of the bladder *has not been* blocked”

συστρέφεται: pr. pass., “nothing is *formed together* in the bladder” i.e. an obstruction

ὁκόσων ἂν ... ἢ: pr. subj. in. gen. rel. cl., “whenever bowels are...”

τῶντὸ (= τὸ αὐτό): “the bladder must suffer *the same thing*”

θερμανθῇ: ao. pass. subj. in indefinite temporal clause with ὁκόταν, “whenever it (i.e. the bladder) is heated”

τῆς φύσιος: gen. of comparison with μᾶλλον, “more than *nature*” i.e. to a greater degree than is normal

ἐφλέγμηνεν: 3 s. ao., “the opening is *inflamed*”

αὐτῆς: referring to the bladder, “its opening”

Hippocrates

όκόταν δὲ ταῦτα πάθῃ, τὸ οὖρον οὐκ ἀφήσιν, ἀλλ' ἐν ἑωυτῇ
 συνέψει καὶ συγκαίει. καὶ τὸ μὲν λεπτότατον αὐτοῦ
 ἀποκρίνεται καὶ τὸ καθαρώτατον διεικὶ καὶ ἐξουρεῖται, τὸ δὲ
 παχύτατον καὶ θολωδέστατον συστρέφεται καὶ συμπήγνυται·
 καὶ τὸ μὲν πρῶτον μικρὸν, ἔπειτα δὲ μέζον γίνεται·
 κυλινδούμενον γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ οὖρου, ὃ τι ἂν συνίστηται παχὺ,
 συναρμόζει πρὸς ἑωυτό· καὶ οὕτως αὖξεται τε καὶ παροῦται.
 καὶ όκόταν οὖρῃ, πρὸς τὸν στόμαχον τῆς κύστιος προσπίπτει
 ὑπὸ τοῦ οὖρου βιαζόμενον, καὶ κωλύει οὔρεϊν, καὶ ὀδύνην
 παρέχει ἰσχυρήν· ὥστε τὰ αἰδοῖα τρίβουσι καὶ ἔλκουσι τὰ

αἰδοῖα, **τά**: genitals

ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart

αὖξω: to make large, increase, augment

ἀφήμι: to send forth, discharge

βιάζω: to constrain, force

διίημι: to discharge

ἔλκω: to draw, pull

ἐξουρέω: to pass with urine

ἔπειτα: thereupon, then

θολώδης, -ες: muddy, turbid

ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty

καθαρός, -ή, -όν: clear, clean

κυλινδέω: to roll around

κύστις, -ιος, ἡ: the bladder

κωλύω: to hinder, check, prevent

λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, light

μικρός, -ή, -όν: small, little

ὀδύνη, ἡ: bodily pain

οὔρεω: to urinate

οὔρον, τό: urine

παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply

πάσχω: to experience, suffer

παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick, stout

προσπίπτω: to fall upon

πρῶτος, -η, -ον: first

πωρώω: to petrify, harden

στόμαχος, ό: a mouth, opening

συγκαίω: to overheat

σμπήγνυμι: to make solid, congeal

συναρμόζω: to fit together

συνέψω: to boil together

συνίστημι: to combine, become

συστρέφω: to form together, compress

τρίβω: to rub

όκόταν πάθῃ: ao. subj. in indefinite temporal clause, “whenever it experiences these things”

ἐν ἑωυτῇ (= ἑαυτῇ): “within it (the bladder)”

αὐτοῦ: “of it (the urine)”

διεικὶ: pr. of διὰ-ίημι, “discharges”

τὸ μὲν πρῶτον ... ἔπειτα: “at first ... then”

ὃ τι ἂν ξυνίστηται: pr. subj. in gen. rel. cl., “whatever becomes solid”

όκόταν οὖρῃ: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “when someone urinates”

οὔρεϊν: objective inf. with κωλύει, “it prevents urination”

ὥστε τρίβουσι: the indic. shows an actual result, “so that they rub”

παιδία τὰ λιθιῶντα· δοκεῖ γὰρ αὐτοῖς τὸ αἷτιον ἐνταῦθα εἶναι τῆς οὐρήσιος. τεκμήριον δὲ, ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει· τὸ γὰρ οὖρον λαμπρότατον οὐρέουσιν οἱ λιθιῶντες, ὅτι τὸ παχύτατον καὶ θολωδέστατον αὐτοῦ μένει καὶ συστρέφεται· τὰ μὲν πλείστα οὕτω λιθιᾷ. γίνεται δὲ παισὶν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ γάλακτος, ἣν μὴ ὑγιερὸν ᾖ, ἀλλὰ θερμόν τε λίην καὶ χολώδες. τὴν γὰρ κοιλίην διαθερμαίνει καὶ τὴν κύστιν, ὥστε τὸ οὖρον συγκαιόμενον ταῦτα πάσχειν. καὶ φημὶ ἄμεινον εἶναι τοῖσι παιδίοισι τὸν οἶνον ὡς ὑδαρέστατον διδόναι· ἥσσον γὰρ τὰς φλέβας συγκαίει καὶ συναναίνει. τοῖσι δὲ θήλεσι λίθοι οὐ γίνονται ὁμοίως· ὁ

αἷτιον, τό: a cause
 ἄμεινων, -ον: better, abler
 γάλα, γάλακτος, τό: milk
 διαθερμαίνω: to warm through
 διδωμι: to give
 ἐνταῦθα: here, there
 ἥσσων, -ον: less
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
 θήλυς, θήλεια, θήλυ: female
 θολώδης, -ες: muddy, turbid
 κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels
 κύστις, -ιος, ἡ: the bladder
 λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear
 λίην: very, exceedingly
 λιθιάω: to suffer from a stone
 λίθος, ὁ: a stone
 μένω: to stay, remain
 οἶνος, ὁ: wine
 ὁμοίως: similarly, in the same way

οὐρέω: to urinate, pass as urine
 οὐρησις, -ιος, ἡ: a making water, urination
 οὖρον, τό: urine
 παῖδιον, τό: a young child
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ: a child
 πάσχω: to experience, suffer
 παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 συγκαίω: to overheat
 συναναίνω: to dry up
 συστρέφω: to form together, compress
 τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
 ὑγιερός, -ή, -όν: wholesome, healthy
 ὑδαρής, -ές: mixed with water, diluted
 φημί: to declare, make known
 φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein
 χολώδης, -ες: bilious

λιθιῶντα: pr. part. nom. n. pl. modifying παιδία, “boys suffering with stones”
 τὸ αἷτιον: the subj. of δοκεῖ, “the cause seems to them” + inf.
 ὅτι οὕτως ἔχει: “here is proof that this is so”
 λαμπρότατον: pred. acc., “urine that is very clear”
 γίνονται: “(stones) happen to” + dat.
 ἥ: 3 s. subj. in general protasis with ἦν (= ἐάν), “if it (the milk) is not healthy”
 ὥστε πάσχειν: pr. inf. in result cl., “so the overheated urine undergoes these things”
 ὡς ὑδαρέστατον: “wine as diluted as possible”
 διδόναι: pr. epex. inf. after ἄμεινον, “better to give”

Hippocrates

γὰρ οὐρητῆρ βραχύς ἐστιν ὁ τῆς κύστιος καὶ εὐρύς, ὥστε βιάζεσθαι τὸ οὖρον ῥηϊδίως· οὔτε γὰρ τῇ χειρὶ τρίβει τὸ αἰδοῖον ὥσπερ τὸ ἄρσεν, οὔτε ἄπτεται τοῦ οὐρητῆρος· ἐς γὰρ τὰ αἰδοῖα συντέτρηνται, οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες οὐκ εὐθὺν τέτρηνται, καὶ διότι οἱ οὐρητῆρες εἰσιν οὐκ εὐρεῖς· καὶ πίνουσι πλείον ἢ οἱ παῖδες.

The effects on health of weather in various seasons.

[10] περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων ὥδε ἔχει, ἢ ὅτι τούτων ἐγγύτατα. περὶ δὲ τῶν ὥρέων ὥδε ἂν τις ἐνθυμεύμενος

αἰδοῖα, *τά*: genitals

ἀνὴρ, *ἀνδρός, ὁ*: a man

ἄπτω: to fasten, (pass.) to touch

ἄρσεν, *-ενος, τό*: a male

βιάζω: to constrain, force

βραχύς, *-εῖα, -ύ*: short

διότι: for the reason that, since

ἐγγύτατα: very near (+ *gen.*)

ἐνθυμέομαι: consider well, ponder

εὐθύς, *-εῖα, -ύ*: straight

εὐρύς, *-εῖα, -ύ*: wide, broad

κύστις, *-ιος, ἡ*: a bladder

οὐρητῆρ, *-ῆρος, ὁ*: urethra

οὖρον, *τό*: urine

παῖς, *παιδός, ὁ*: a child, boy

πίνω: to drink

πλείων, *-ον*: more

ῥηϊδίως: easily, readily

συντετραίνω: to unite by a channel

τετραίνω: to pierce, perforate

τρίβω: to rub

χείρ, *χειρός, ἡ*: the hand

ὥδε: so, thus

ὥρη, *ἡ*: season

ὥστε βιάζεσθαι: pr. inf. in result clause, “so the urine is forced easily”

οὔτε... οὔτε: “neither...nor”

τῇ χειρὶ: dat. of means, “they do not rub with the hand”

ὥσπερ τὸ ἄρσεν: “as a male (does)”

τοῦ οὐρητῆρος: gen. after ἄπτεται, “nor do they touch the urethra”

συντέτρηνται (sc. οἱ οὐρητῆρες): perf., “(their urethras) are opened directly into the genitals”

πλείον ἢ: “(females) drink more than boys”

ὥδε ἔχει: “it is so”

τούτων ἐγγύτατα: “or something very near to these things”

ἐνθυμεύμενος: pr. part. pass., cond., modifying τις and taking the place of a pr. opt. in the protasis, “if one were to consider”

διαγινώσκοι ὁκοῖόν τι μέλλει ἔσεσθαι τὸ ἔτος, εἴτε νοσερὸν, εἴτε ὑγιερὸν. ἦν μὲν γὰρ κατὰ λόγον γένηται τὰ σημεῖα ἐπὶ τοῖσι ἄστροισι δύνουσί τε καὶ ἐπιτέλλουσιν, ἔν τε τῷ μετοπώρῳ ὕδατα γένηται, καὶ ὁ χειμῶν μέτριος, καὶ μήτε λίην εὐδῖος, μήτε ὑπερβάλλον τὸν καιρὸν τῷ ψύχει, ἔν τε τῷ ἡρι ὕδατα γένηται ὥραῖα, καὶ ἐν τῷ θέρει, οὕτω τὸ ἔτος ὑγιεινότατον εἰκὸς εἶναι. ἦν δὲ ὁ μὲν χειμῶν αὐχμηρὸς καὶ βόρειος γένηται, τὸ δὲ ἡρ ἔπομβρον καὶ νότιον, ἀνάγκη τὸ θέρος πυρετῶδες γίνεσθαι καὶ ὀφθαλμίας καὶ δυσεντερίας ἐμποιεῖν. ὁκόταν γὰρ τὸ πνίγος ἐπιγένηται ἐξαίφνης, τῆς τε

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
 ἄστρον, τό: a star
 αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry
 βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern
 διαγινώσκω: to distinguish, discern
 δύνω: to set
 δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery
 εἰκός: likely
 εἴτε... εἴτε: whether...or
 ἐμποιέω: to make in, cause
 ἐξαίφνης: suddenly
 ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall
 ἐπιτέλλω: to rise
 ἔπομβρος, -ον: very rainy
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 εὐδῖος, -ον: calm, fine, mild
 ἡρ, ἡρος, τό: spring
 θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
 καιρός, ὁ: due measure, proportion, fitness

λίην: very, exceedingly
 μέλλω: to be about to, be going to (+ inf.)
 μετόπωρον, τό: autumn
 μέτριος, -η, -ον: within measure, moderate
 νοσερός, -ή, -όν: of sickness, diseased
 νότιος, -η, -ον: southern
 ὁκοῖος, -η, -ον: of what sort, what kind
 ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, inflammation of the eye
 πνίγος, -εος, τό: a stifling heat
 πυρετώδης, -ες: feverish, full of fevers
 σημεῖον, τό: a sign, a mark, token
 ὑγιεινός, -ή, -όν: wholesome, sound, healthy
 ὑγιερός, -ή, -όν: wholesome, healthy
 ὑπερβάλλω: to throw over, exceed
 χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
 ψυχός, -εος, τό: cold
 ὥραῖος, -η, -ον: timely, seasonable

ἄν διαγινώσκοι: pres. opt. in fut. less vivid apodosis, "one would discern"
 ἔσεσθαι: fut. inf. complementary with μέλλει, "of what sort the year is going to be"
 κατὰ λόγον: "according to principle"
 ἦν γένηται: 3 s. ao. subj. in protasis of pr. general cond., "if the signs occur ... if there are waters, etc."
 τῷ ψύχει: dat. of specification, "nor exceeding due measure with respect to cold" i.e. being too cold
 ὁκόταν ἐπιγένηται: ao. subj. in gen. temp. cl., "whenever the stifling heat happens suddenly"
 εἰκὸς εἶναι: (sc. ἐστι): "then the year is likely to be"

Hippocrates

γῆς ὑγρῆς ἐούσης ὑπὸ τῶν ὄμβρων τῶν ἔαρινῶν καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ νότου, ἀνάγκη διπλόον τὸ καῦμα εἶναι ὑπὸ τε τῆς γῆς διαβρόχου ἐούσης καὶ θερμῆς καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου καίοντος, τῶν τε κοιλιῶν μὴ συνεστηκυῶν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις, μήτε τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου ἀνεξηρασμένου — οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε, τοῦ ἥρος τοιούτου ἐόντος, μὴ οὐ πλαδᾶν τὸ σῶμα καὶ τὴν σάρκα — ὥστε τοὺς πυρετοὺς ἐπιπίπτειν ὀξυτάτους ἅπασιν, μάλιστα δὲ τοῖσι φλεγματίησι. καὶ δυσεντερίας εἰκὸς ἐστι γίνεσθαι καὶ τῆσι γυναιξὶ καὶ τοῖσιν εἵδεσι τοῖσιν ὑγροτάτοις. καὶ ἦν μὲν ἐπὶ κυνὸς ἐπιτολῇ ὕδωρ ἐπιγένηται καὶ χειμῶν, καὶ οἱ ἐτησίαι

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
διάβροχος, -ον: very wet, moist
διπλός, -η, -ον: twofold, double
δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery
ἐαρινός, ἡ, ὄν: of spring
ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain
εἶδος, -εος, τό: figure, type, constitution
εἰκός: likely
ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon, attack
ἐπιτολή, ἡ: rising (of a star)
ἐτησίαι, οἱ: Etesians, annual winds
ἦρ, ἥρος, τό: spring

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
καίω: to burn, heat
καῦμα, -ατος, τό: a heat
κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels
κύων, κυνὸς, ὁ: the dog star, Sirius
νότος, ὁ: the south wind
οἶόν τε ἐστὶ: it is possible (+ inf.)
ὄμβρος, ὁ: a heavy rain, shower
ὀξύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, keen, acute
πλαδάω: to be flaccid, be flabby
πυρετός, ὁ: a burning heat, fever
σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh
συνίστημι: make solid, brace
ὕγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist
φλεγματίας, -ου, ὁ: phlegmatic
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter

τῆς γῆς ὑγρῆς ἐούσης: gen. abs., “with the ground being wet”

τῶν ἔαρινῶν: an attributive phrase, “by the spring rains”

ὑπὸ ἐούσης καὶ καίοντος: pr. part. gen., “by the earth being ... and by the sun burning”

συνεστηκυῶν: perf. part. gen abs., “bowels not having become solid”

ἀνεξηρασμένου: perf. part. gen abs., “brain having become dry”

τοῦ ἥρος τοιούτου ἐόντος: gen. abs., “the spring being such”

μὴ οὐ πλαδᾶν: pr. inf., “it is not possible for the body not to be flabby” μὴ οὐ + inf. is regular after a neg. main clause, resulting in a strong positive assertion

ὥστε ἐπιπίπτειν: inf. showing potential result, “so that fevers fall upon all”

τοῖσιν εἵδεσι τοῖσιν ὑγροτάτοις: “(those of) the wettest constitutions”

ἦν ἐπιγένηται: ao. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “if rain occurs”

πνεύσωσιν, ἐλπίς παύσασθαι, καὶ τὸ μετόπωρον ὑγιερὸν γενέσθαι: ἦν δὲ μὴ, κίνδυνος θανάτους τε γενέσθαι τοῖσι παιδίοισι καὶ τῇσι γυναιξίν, τοῖσι δὲ πρεσβύτησιν ἥκιστα, τοὺς τε περιγενομένους ἐς τεταρταίους ἀποτελευτᾶν, καὶ ἐκ τῶν τεταρταίων ἐς ὕδρωπας. ἦν δ' ὁ χειμῶν νότιος γένηται καὶ ἔπομβρος καὶ εὐδιος, τὸ δὲ ἦρ βόρειόν τε καὶ αὐχμηρὸν καὶ χειμέριον, πρῶτον μὲν τὰς γυναῖκας, ὁκόσαι ἂν τύχωσιν ἐν γαστρὶ ἔχουσαι, καὶ ὁ τόκος αὐτῇσιν ἢ πρὸς τὸ ἦρ, ἐκτιτρώσκεσθαι· ὁκόσαι δ' ἂν καὶ τέκωσιν, ἀκρατέα τὰ παιδιά

ἀκρατής, -ές: powerless, weak
ἀποτελευτάω: to end up in (ἐς + acc.)
αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry, dusty, rough
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern
γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: belly
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
ἐκτιτρώσκω: to miscarry
ἐλπίς, -ίδος, ἡ: hope, expectation
ἔπομβρος, -ον: very rainy
εὐδιος, -ον: calm, clear, mild
ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least
ἦρ, ἦρος, τό: spring
θάνατος, ὁ: death
κίνδυνος, ὁ: a danger
μετόπωρον, τό: autumn

νότιος, -η, -ον: wet, moist, damp
παῖδιον, τό: a young child
παύομαι: to cease
περιγίνομαι: to be superior to, overcome
πνέω: to blow
πρεσβύτης, -ου, ὁ: an old man
τεταρταῖος, -η, -ον: every four days, quartan (fever)
τίκτω: to bear, give birth
τόκος, ὁ: childbirth, parturition
τυγχάνω: to happen to (+ part.)
ὕγιρός, -ή, -όν: healthy, wholesome
ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ὁ: dropsy
χειμέριος, -η, -ον: wintry, stormy
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter

πνεύσωσιν: ao. subj., “and (if) the Etesian winds blow”

ἐλπίς: “there is hope that” + inf.

παύσασθαι, γενέσθαι: note the timelessness of the aorist inf., “that they will cease and the autumn will become”

κίνδυνος: “there is a danger that” + acc. + inf.

τοὺς περιγενομένους: ao. part. acc. subj. of inf. ἀποτελευτᾶν, “that those who survive end up getting a fever”

τὰς γυναῖκας: acc. subj. of ἐκτιτρώσκεσθαι, “the women miscarry”

ἂν τύχωσιν: ao. subj. in gen. rel. clause, “whoever happens to” + part.

ἐν γαστρὶ ἔχουσαι: i.e. be pregnant

καὶ ὁ τόκος ἦ: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “and (whenever) the delivery is”

ἂν τέκωσιν: ao. subj. in gen. rel. clause, “whoever gives birth”

Hippocrates

τίκτειν καὶ νοσώδεα, ὥστε ἢ αὐτίκα ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἢ ζῶσι
λεπτά τε ἑόντα καὶ ἀσθενέα καὶ νοσώδεα. ταῦτα μὲν τῇσι
γυναιξίν. τοῖσι δὲ λοιποῖσι δυσεντερίας, καὶ ὀφθαλμίας ξηράς
καὶ ἐνίοισι καταρροὺς ἀπὸ τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐπὶ τὸν πλεύμονα.

ἀπόλλυμι: to destroy utterly, kill, slay

ἀσθενής, -ές: without strength, weak,
feeble

αὐτίκα: at once

δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery

ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some

ζάω: to live

κατάρροος, ὁ: a catarrh, inflammation of
the nose and throat

κεφαλή, ἡ: a head

λεπτός, -ή, -όν: small, puny

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

νοσώδης, -ες: sickly, diseased

ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry

ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, an
inflammation of the eye

πλεύμων, -ονος, ὁ: lung

τίκτω: to bear, give birth

τίκτειν: inf. for indic., “the women give birth to”

ὥστε ἢ ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἢ ζῶσι: result cl., “so that they either die or they live....”
note the variation between inf. and indic.

δυσεντερίας: acc. (sc. *εἶναι*), “for the rest *there are* dysentery and eye
inflammations”

Result Clauses

ὥστε introduces result clauses either with an infinitive or with a finite verb.

ὥστε + indicative often emphasizes the actual occurrence of the result. Both time and aspect are indicated by the form of the verb.

καὶ ὀδύνην παρέχει ἰσχυρὴν ὥστε τὰ αἰδοῖα τρίβουσι: “and it causes strong pain, with the result that they rub their genitals”

ὥστε + infinitive indicates a possible or intended result, without emphasizing its actual occurrence. The infinitive does not express time, but only aspect.

ὥστε ἐξαίφνης τοὺς μὲν ἀπόλλυσθαι, τοὺς δὲ παραπλήκτους γίνεσθαι: “so that some die suddenly, while others become paralyzed”

Just as AWP makes frequent use of the indefinite form of relative and temporal clauses (with *ἄν* + subjunctive) to indicate generalized relationships, so too **ὥστε** + infinitive is used frequently to indicate typical or general results, rather than actual results. Note the following example where the two forms are mixed:

ὥστε ἢ αὐτίκα ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἢ ζῶσι λεπτά τε ἑόντα καὶ ἀσθενέα καὶ νοσώδεα: “so that they either die immediately or they continue living, but weak and sickly”

τοῖσι μὲν οὖν φλεγματίησι τὰς δυσεντερίας εἰκὸς γίνεσθαι, καὶ τῇσι γυναιξὶ, φλέγματος ἐπικαταρρυνέντος ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου, διὰ τὴν ὑγρότητα τῆς φύσιος· τοῖσι δὲ χολώδεσιν ὀφθαλμίας ξηρὰς, διὰ τὴν θερμότητα καὶ ξηρότητα τῆς σαρκός· τοῖσι δὲ πρεσβύτησι καταρρόους, διὰ τὴν ἀραιότητα καὶ τὴν ἔκτηξιν τῶν φλεβῶν, ὥστε ἐξαίφνης τοὺς μὲν ἀπόλλυσθαι, τοὺς δὲ παραπλήκτους γίνεσθαι τὰ δεξιὰ ἢ τὰ ἀριστερά. ὁκόταν γὰρ, τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐόντος νοτίου, καὶ θερμοῦ τοῦ σώματος, μὴ ξυνίστηται ὁ ἐγκέφαλος μὴδὲ φλέβες, τοῦ ἡρος ἐπιγενομένου

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood

ἀπόλλυμαι: to die

ἀραιότης, -ητος, ἡ: looseness, porousness, flabbiness

ἀριστερός, -ή, -όν: left, on the left side

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman

δεξιός, -ή, -όν: right, on the right side

δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery

ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain

εἰκός: likely

ἐκτεξίς, -ιος, ἡ: a melting away, attenuation

ἐξαίφνης: suddenly

ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall

ἐπικαταρρέω: to run down

ἡρ, ἡρος, τό: spring

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

θερμότης, -ητος, ἡ: heat

κατάρροος, ὁ: a catarrh, inflammation of the nose and throat

νότιος, -η, -ον: wet, moist, damp

ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry

ξηρότης, -ητος, ἡ: dryness

ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, an inflammation of the eye

παράπληκτος, -ον: paralytic, paralyzed

πρεσβύτης, -ου, ὁ: an old man

σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh

συνίστημι: to combine, become

σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body

ὑγρότης, -ατος, ἡ: wetness, moisture

φλέγμα, -ατος, τό: phlegm

φλεγματίας, -ου, ὁ: phlegmatic

φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein

χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter

χολώδης, -ες: bilious

φλέγματος ἐπικαταρρυνέντος: gen. abs., “with phlegm running down from the head”

ὥστε τοὺς μὲν ἀπόλλυσθαι, τοὺς δὲ γίνεσθαι: pr. inf. in res. cl., “so that some die, some become....”

τὰ δεξιὰ ἢ τὰ ἀριστερά: acc. of resp., “paralyzed on the right or left side”

ὁκόταν ... μὴ ξυνίστηται: pr. subj. with **μὴ** indicating a conditional force to this temporal clause, “if the brain and veins do not become hardened”

τοῦ χειμῶνος ἐόντος: gen. abs. causal, “because the winter is...”

Hippocrates

βορείου καὶ αὐχμηροῦ καὶ ψυχροῦ, ὁ ἐγκέφαλος, ὀπηνίκα αὐτὸν ἔδει ἅμα καὶ τῷ ἡρι διαλύεσθαι καὶ καθαίρεσθαι ὑπὸ τε κορύζης καὶ βράγχων, τηνικαῦτα πηγνυταί τε καὶ ξυνίσταται, ὥστε ἐξαίφνης τοῦ θέρους ἐπιγενομένου καὶ τοῦ καύματος, καὶ τῆς μεταβολῆς ἐπιγενομένης, ταῦτα τὰ νοσεύματα ἐπιπίπτειν. καὶ ὁκόσαι μὲν τῶν πολίων κέονταί γε καλῶς τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῶν πνευμάτων, ὕδασί τε χρέονται ἀγαθοῖσιν, αὗται μὲν ἦσσαν αἰσθάνονται τῶν τοιούτων μεταβολέων· ὁκόσαι δὲ ὕδασί τε ἐλείοισι χρέονται καὶ λιμνώδεσι, κέονταί τε μὴ καλῶς τῶν

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good	θέρους, -εος, τό: summer
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, feel	καθαίρω: to cleanse, clean, purge
ἅμα: at the time of, together with (+ dat.)	καῦμα, -ατος, τό: a burning heat
αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry, dusty, rough	κείμει: to be laid, lie
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern	κόρυζα, -ης, ῆ: a running of the nose, head cold
βράγχος, ὁ: hoarseness, sore throat	λιμνώδης, -ες: pooling, marshy
δεῖ: it is necessary	μεταβολή, ῆ: a change, changing
διαλύω: to loose, undo	νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness
ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: a brain	ὀπηνίκα: at what point, when
ἐλειος, -η, -ον: marshy	πήγνυμι: to make fast
ἐξαίφνης: suddenly	συνίστημι: to set together, combine, associate, unite, band together
ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall	τηνικαῦτα: at that time, then
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon, befall	χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)
ἡρ, ἡρος, τό: spring	ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
ἦσσαν, -ον: less (+ gen.)	

ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ... πηγνυταί τε καὶ ξυνίσταται: this is the main clause of this complex sentence

ὀπηνίκα ... τηνικαῦτα: correlatives, “at the very time when ... just at that time”

διαλύεσθαι καὶ καθαίρεσθαι: pas. inf. with acc. subj. αὐτὸν after ἔδει, “when it (the brain) ought to be loosened and cleansed”

ὥστε ... ἐπιπίπτειν: res. cl., “so that these diseases befall”

τοῦ θέρους ἐπιγενομένου ... τῆς μεταβολῆς ἐπιγενομένης: gen. abs., “with summer becoming ... the change occurring”

τοῦ ἡλίου καὶ τῶν πνευμάτων: gen. of place from which, “they lie from (the direction of) the sun and winds”

ὕδασί ἀγαθοῖσιν: dat. of means with χρέονται, “they use good waters”

αὗται μὲν ἦσσαν... αὗται δὲ μᾶλλον: “while these cities feel less... these cities feel more”

πνευμάτων καὶ τοῦ ἡλίου, αὐται δὲ μᾶλλον. κῆν μὲν τὸ θέρος
 αὐχμηρὸν γένηται, θᾶσσον παύονται αἱ νοῦσοι· ἦν δὲ
 ἔπομβρον, πολυχρόνιοι γίνονται· καὶ φαγεδαίνας κίνδυνος
 ἐγγίνεσθαι ἀπὸ πάσης προφάσιος, ἦν ἔλκος ἐγγένηται· καὶ
 λειεντερίαί καὶ ὕδρωπες τελευτῶσι τοῖσι νοσεύμασιν
 ἐπιγίνονται· οὐ γὰρ ἀποξηραίνονται αἱ κοιλίαι ῥῆϊδίως. ἦν δὲ
 τὸ θέρος ἔπομβρον γένηται καὶ νότιον καὶ τὸ μετόπωρον, τὸν
 χειμῶνα ἀνάγκη νοσερὸν εἶναι, καὶ τοῖσι φλεγματίησι καὶ
 τοῖσι γεραιτέροισι τεσσαράκοντα ἑτέων καύσους γίνεσθαι
 εἰκός, τοῖσι δὲ χολώδεσι πλευρίτιδας καὶ περιπλευμονίας. ἦν

ἀνάγκη, ἦ: force, constraint, necessity
 ἀποξηραίνω: to dry up
 αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry, dusty, rough
 γεραίος, -ή, -όν: old
 ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place,
 happen
 εἰκός: likely (+ inf.)
 ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound
 ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about,
 befall
 ἔπομβρος, -ον: very rainy
 ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year
 θάσσων, -ον: quicker, swifter
 θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
 καῦσος, ό: a burning heat, fever
 κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk
 κοιλίη, ἦ: belly, (pl.) bowels
 λειεντερία, ἦ: leientery, a passing of one's
 food undigested
 μᾶλλον: more, rather

μετόπωρον, τό: autumn
 νοσερός, -ή, -όν: sickly, marked by illness
 νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness
 νότιος, -η, -ον: wet, moist, damp
 νοῦσος, ἦ: a sickness, disease
 παύομαι: to cease
 περιπλευμονία, ἦ: inflammation of the
 lungs
 πλευρίτις, -ιδος, ἦ: pleurisy
 πολυχρόνιος, -ον: long-lasting, chronic
 πρόφασις, -ιος, ἦ: a reason, cause
 ῥῆϊδίως: easily, readily
 τελευτάω: to complete, finish, accomplish
 τεσσαράκοντα: forty
 ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ό: dropsy
 φαγέδινα, ἦ: cancerous sore, canker
 φλεγματίας, -ου, ό: phlegmatic
 χειμών, -ώνος, ό: winter
 χολώδης, -ες: bilious

τῶν πνευμάτων καὶ τοῦ ἡλίου: gen., “from the (direction of) the winds and sun”
 κῆν (= καί + ἐάν) γένηται: ao. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “even if summer becomes”
 ἐγγίνεσθαι: pr. inf. after κίνδυνος, “there is danger that sores will be introduced”
 τελευτῶσι: pr. part. dat. agreeing with νοσεύμασιν, “as they conclude”
 τοῖσι γεραιτέροισι: comp., “for those older than 40 years”

δὲ τὸ θέρος αὐχμηρὸν γένηται καὶ βόρειον, τὸ δὲ μετόπωρον
ἔπομβρον καὶ νότιον, κεφαλαλγίας ἐς τὸν χειμῶνα καὶ
σφακέλους τοῦ ἐγκεφάλου εἰκὸς γίνεσθαι, καὶ προσέτι
βράγχους καὶ κορύζας καὶ βήχας, ἐνίοισι δὲ καὶ φθίσιαις. ἦν δὲ
βόρειόν τε ἢ καὶ ἄνυδρον, καὶ μήτε ὑπὸ κύνα ἔπομβρον, μήτε
ἐπὶ τῷ ἀρκτούρῳ, τοῖσι μὲν φλεγματίησι φύσει συμφέρει
μάλιστα, καὶ τοῖσιν ὑγροῖσι τὰς φύσεις, καὶ τῇσι γυναιξί·
τοῖσι δὲ χολώδεσι τοῦτο πολεμιώτατον γίνεται· λίην γὰρ
ἀναξηραίνονται, καὶ ὀφθαλμῖαι αὐτοῖσιν ἐπιγίνονται ξηραί,
καὶ πυρετοὶ ὀξέες καὶ πολυχρόνιοι, ἐνίοισι δὲ καὶ μελαγχολία.
τῆς γὰρ χολῆς τὸ μὲν ὑγρότατον καὶ ὕδαρέστατον

ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up
ἄνυδρος, -ον: waterless, dry
ἀρκτοῦρος, ὁ: Arcturus (a star)
αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry, dusty, rough
βήξ, βηχός, ὁ: a cough
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern
βράγχος, ὁ: hoarseness, sore throat
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
ἐγκέφαλος, ὁ: brain
εἰκός: likely (+ *inf.*)
ἐνιοί, -αι, -α: some
ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about,
befall
ἔπομβρος, -ον: very rainy
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer
κεφαλαλγία, ἡ: a headache
κόρυζα, -ης, ἡ: a running of the nose, head
cold
κύων, ἡ: the Dog Star, Sirius
λίην: very much, exceedingly
μελαγχολία, ἡ: melancholy

μετόπωρον, τό: autumn
μήτε...μήτε: neither... nor
νότιος, -η, -ον: wet, moist, damp
ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry
ὀξύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, keen, acute
ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, an
inflammation of the eye
πολέμιος, -η, -ον: hostile, harmful
πολυχρόνιος, -ον: long-lasting, chronic
προσέτι: over and above, besides
πυρετός, ὁ: a burning heat, fever
συμφέρω: to be beneficial to +*dat.*
σφάκελος, ὁ: gangrene, mortification
ὑγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, running, fluid
ὕδαρής, -ές: watery, full of water
φθίσις, -ιος, ἡ: a wasting away,
consumption
φλεγματίας, -ου, ὁ: phlegmatic
χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
χολή, ἡ: gall, bile
χολώδης, -ες: bilious

ἦν γένηται: ao. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “if the summer becomes...”
φθίσιαις: specifically tuberculosis of the lung, hence “phthisiology”
ἦν ... ἦ: pr. subj. of εἶμι, “if (the summer) is dry...”
ὑπὸ κύνα: “under the Dog Star,” whose helical rising is July 19
ἐπὶ τῷ ἀρκτούρῳ: “at Arcturus,” whose helical rising is September 17
τὰς φύσεις: acc. of resp., “those moist in constitution”
τῆς χολῆς: partitive gen., “the wettest and most watery (portion) of the bile...”

ἀναξηραίνεται καὶ ἀναλίσκεται, τὸ δὲ παχύτατον καὶ δριμύτατον λείπεται, καὶ τοῦ αἵματος κατὰ τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον· ἀφ' ὧν ταῦτα τὰ νοσεύματα αὐτοῖσι γίνεται. τοῖσι δὲ φλεγματίησι πάντα ταῦτα ἀρωγά ἐστιν: ἀποξηραίνονται γὰρ, καὶ ἐς τὸν χειμῶνα ἀφικνεύονται, οὐ πλαδῶντες, ἀλλὰ ἀνεξηρασμένοι.

αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood

ἀναλίσκω: to use up

ἀποξηραίνω: to dry up

ἀρωγός, όν,: aiding, beneficial

ἀφικνεόμαι: to come to

δριμύς, -εία, -ύ: keen, pungent, acrid

λείπω: to leave, leave behind

νόσενμα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease

παχύς, -εία, -υ: thick

πλαδάω: to be flaccid, be flabby

φλεγματίας, -ου, ό: phlegmatic

χειμών, -ώνος, ό: winter

τὸν αὐτὸν λόγον: “according to the same account,” i.e. “in the same manner”
ἀνεξηρασμένοι: perf. part., “but having been dried up”

Expressions of Specification and Respect

For adjectives and for verbs expressing a state, an accusative noun can be added to denote a thing *in respect to which* the verb or adjective is limited. This **accusative of respect** is the most common such expression in Greek. Besides this one, AWP also occasionally uses a **dative of specification**; at other times, perhaps just for the sake of variation, the author also uses **ἐς** or **κατά** + the accusative. Here are some examples:

παραπλήκτους γίνεσθαι τὰ δεξιὰ ἢ τὰ ἀριστερά: they become paralyzed with respect to the right or left sides

τά τε γὰρ μεγέθεα μεγάλοι, τὰ πάχεα δ' ὑπερπάχητες: they are large in size and very thick in breadth

ἡμερώτεροι τὰ ἥθεα: milder in character

τὰ εἶδεα ὅμοιοι: “similar in physique”

ὀργήν τε καὶ σύνεσιν βελτίους: “better in disposition and intelligence”

μήτε ὑπερβάλλων τὸν καιρὸν τῷ ψύχει: “nor exceeding the due measure with respect to cold”

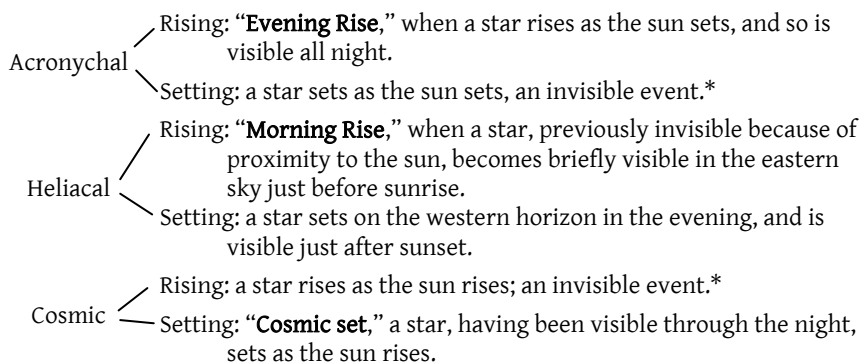
ἐς τε τὰς τέχνας ὀξυτέρους τε καὶ συνετωτέρους καὶ πολέμια ἀμείνους εὐρήσεις: “you will find them keener and more intelligent in the crafts and better with respect to war”

διαφέρουσιν ἀλλήλων ἐς τὰ πάντα: “they differ among each other in all things”

τά μὲν ἐς τὴν δίαιταν αὐτῶν οὕτως ἔχει: “such are things with regard to their diet”

Hippocrates' Medical Calendar

Throughout *AWP*, times of the year are indicated by astronomical events. Changes in season are marked not only by the equinoxes (*ισημερίαι*), and solstices (*τροπαί*), as they are today, but also by the rising (*ἀνατολή*) and setting (*δύσις*) of celestial bodies. Risings and settings fall into one of three categories: acronychal, heliacal, and cosmic.



It is worth noting that the *true* acronychal rising and cosmic setting are invisible events, and so the ancients are referring to the *apparent* events. The *apparent* acronychal (evening) rising is the last *visible* rising of a star in the evening twilight. On the following day, there will still be too much daylight to see the star as it cross the horizon. The *apparent* cosmic setting is the first *visible* setting of a star in the morning twilight. On the preceding day, sunlight would have obscured the star at the moment it met the horizon. These two events, together with the heliacal (morning) rise, are used to mark the time of year in *AWP*. These phenomena are described for three celestial bodies:

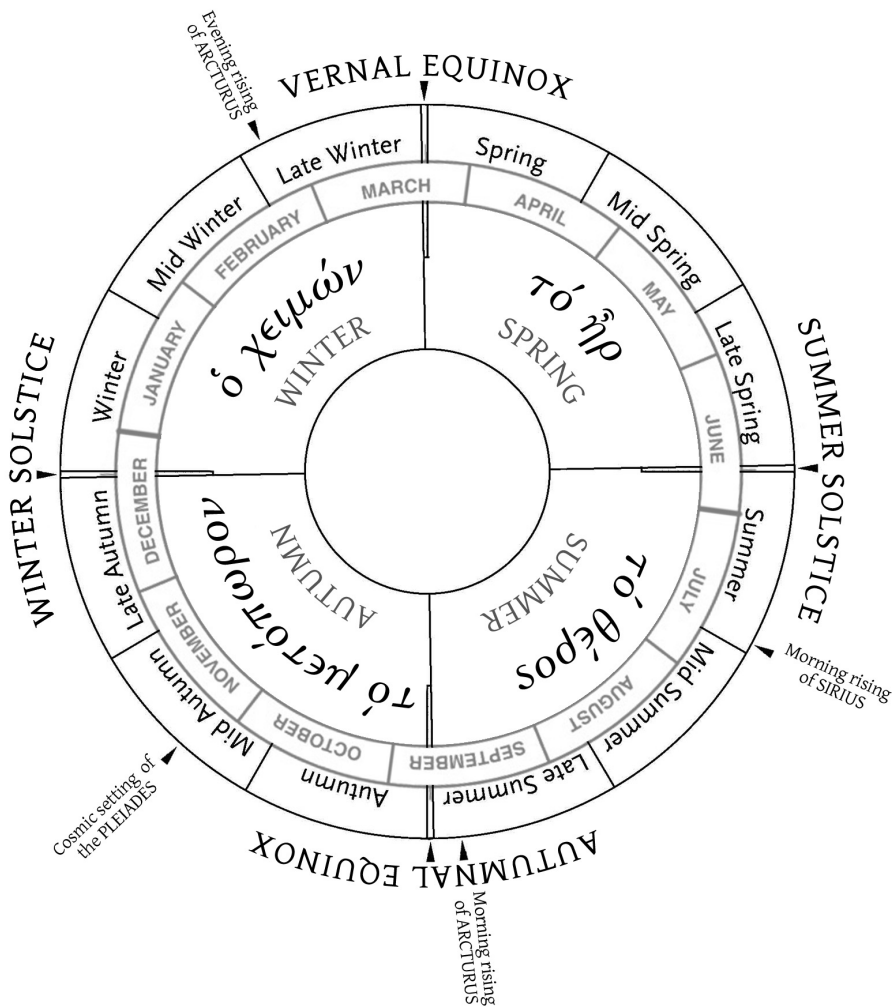
ὁ κύων: the “Dog Star,” **Sirius**, whose heliacal rising indicated the “dog days” of summer and the flooding of the Nile River.

αἱ Πλειάδες: the **Pleiades**, a cluster of 7 stars in the constellation Taurus. The heliacal rising of the Pleiades was a popular date for the beginning of summer, while their cosmic setting marked the beginning of winter.

ὁ Ἄρκτοῦρος: **Arcturus**, the brightest star in the constellation Boötes, whose acronychal and heliacal risings were popular dates for the bringing of spring and the end of summer, respectively.

* These definitions are not used consistently by astronomers, and are sometimes interchanged. For a discussion of this inconsistency, as well as the broader concepts, see Kelley, David H., and E. F. Milone. *Exploring Ancient Skies: A Survey of Ancient and Cultural Astronomy*. (New York: Springer, 2011), 40.

The circular calendar below shows the approximate position of the celestial events mentioned in *AWP* throughout the year.



Hippocrates

It is especially important to pay attention to the effects of changes in the seasons.

[11.] κατὰ ταῦτά τις ἐννοεῦμενος καὶ σκοπεύμενος προειδεῖν ἂν τὰ πλείστα τῶν μελλόντων ἔσεσθαι ἀπὸ τῶν μεταβολέων. φυλάσσεσθαι δὲ χρὴ μάλιστα τὰς μεταβολὰς τῶν ὥρέων τὰς μεγίστας, καὶ μήτε φάρμακον διδόναι ἐκόντα, μήτε καίειν ὃ τι ἐς κοιλίην, μήτε τάμνειν, πρὶν παρέλθωσιν ἡμέραι δέκα ἢ καὶ πλείονες· μέγισται δὲ εἰσιν αἶδε αἱ τέσσαρες καὶ ἐπικινδυνόταται, ἡλίου τροπαὶ ἀμφότεραι καὶ μᾶλλον αἱ θεριναὶ καὶ ἰσημερίαι νομιζόμεναι εἶναι ἀμφότεραι, μᾶλλον δὲ

ἀμφότερος, -η, -ον: each, both

δέκα: ten

δίδωμι: to give

ἐκὼν: willing, readily

ἐννοέω: to think, consider, reflect

ἐπικίνδυνος, -ον: dangerous, precarious

ἡμέρη, ἡ: a day

θερινός, -ή, -όν: of the summer, in summer

ἰσημερία, ἡ: equinox

καίω: to kindle, burn

κοιλίη, ἡ: belly

μέλλω: to be about to, be going to (+ inf.)

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

μήτε...μήτε: neither...nor

νομίζω: to hold, think, believe

παρέρχομαι: to go by, pass

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πλείων, -ον: more, greater

πρὶν: before

πρόοιδα: to know beforehand

σκοπέω: to look after, observe

τέμνω: to cut

τέσσαρες, -α: four

τροπή, ἡ: a turn, turning

φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine

φυλάσσω: to keep watch, guard

χρὴ: it is necessary

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἐννοεῦμενος (= ἐννοοῦμενος): "by reflecting"

σκοπεύμενος (= σκοπούμενος): "by observing"

προειδεῖν: potential opt. with ἂν, "one may know in advance"

ἔσεσθαι: fut. inf. after μελλόντων, "of the things about to be"

ἐκόντα: pr. part. agreeing with the subject of διδόναι, "that one willingly give"

καίειν: here, "to cauterize"

πρὶν παρέλθωσιν: ao. subj., "before 10 days pass" without ἂν as often in Herodotus

αἶδε: "the following (changes)"

ἡλίου τροπαί: the solstices (June 25 and Dec. 23), the days on which the sun's rising begins to "turn" direction, hence the longest and shortest day of the year

ἰσημερίαι: i.e. March 23 and Sept. 25, the vernal and autumnal equinoxes

νομιζόμεναι: pr. part. (sc. εἰσι): "are thought to be"

αἱ μετοπωριναί. δεῖ δὲ καὶ τῶν ἄστρον τὰς ἐπιτολὰς φυλάσσεσθαι, καὶ μάλιστα τοῦ κυνὸς, ἔπειτα ἀρκτοῦρου, καὶ ἔτι πληϊάδων δύσιν: τὰ τε γὰρ νοσεύματα μάλιστα ἐν ταύτησι τῇσιν ἡμέρησιν κρίνεται. καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀποφθίνει, τὰ δὲ λήγει, τὰ δὲ ἄλλα πάντα μεθίσταται ἐς ἕτερον εἶδος καὶ ἑτέρεην κατάστασιν.

The differences between Europe and Asia.

[12.] περὶ μὲν τούτων οὕτως ἔχει. βούλομαι δὲ περὶ τῆς Ἀσίας καὶ τῆς Εὐρώπης δεῖξαι ὁκόσον διαφέρουσιν ἀλλήλων ἐς τὰ πάντα, καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐθνέων τῆς μορφῆς, ὅτι διαλλάσσει καὶ μηδὲν ὅμοιον ἀλλήλοισιν. περὶ μὲν οὖν ἀπάντων πολὺς ἂν εἴη λόγος, περὶ δὲ τῶν μεγίστων καὶ πλείστον διαφερόντων

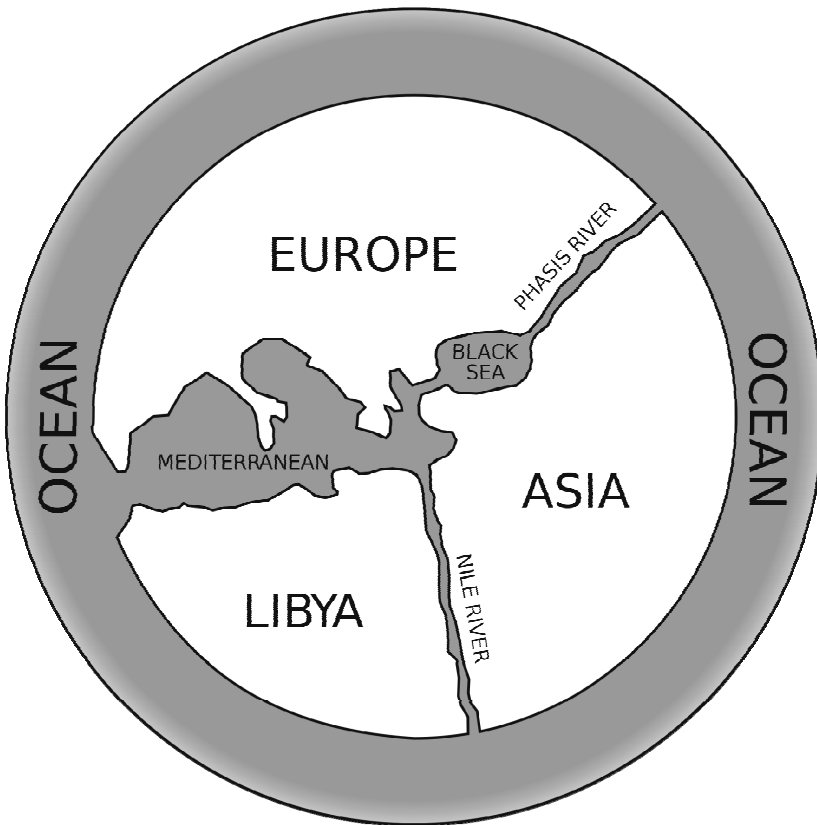
ἀλλήλων: one another
 ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole
 ἀποφθίνω: to destroy, be fatal
 ἀρκτοῦρος, ὁ: the star Arcturus
 Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
 ἄστρον, τό: a star
 βούλομαι: to will, wish
 δεῖ: it is necessary (+ inf.)
 δείκνυμι: to bring to light, exhibit, point out
 διαλλάσσω: to change, be different
 διαφέρω: to differ
 δύσις, -ιος, ἡ: a setting (of a star)
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a nation, people
 εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape
 ὅμοιος: it is like, similar to (+ dat.)
 ἐπιτολή, ἡ: a rising (of a star)

ἕτερος, -η, -ον: another, other
 Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe
 ἡμέρη, ἡ: a day
 κατάστασις, -ιος, ἡ: a constitution
 κρίνω: to bring to a crisis
 κύων, ἡ: the Dog Star, Sirius
 λήγω: to abate, cease
 μεθίστημι: to change
 μετοπωρινός, -ή, -όν: of the autumn, autumnal
 μορφή, ἡ: form, shape
 νόσενμα, -ατος, τό: sickness, illness
 πλειάδες, αἱ: the Pleiades, a constellation of 7 stars
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 φυλάσσω: to keep watch, guard

κυνὸς: the heliacal rising of Sirius, the dogstar, July 19
 ἀρκτοῦρον: the heliacal rising of Arcturus, Sept. 17
 πληϊάδων δύσιν: the cosmic setting of the constellation Pleiades, Nov. 6
 τὰ μὲν...τὰ δὲ: "some (diseases)...others"
 δεῖξαι: ao. inf. of δείκνυμι, "I wish to point out"
 ὁκόσον διαφέρουσιν: indirect quest., "to point out how much they differ"
 ἐς τὰ πάντα: "in every respect"
 εἴη: potential opt. with ἂν, "the account would be great"

The World of *Airs, Waters, and Places*

It is likely that the names “Europe” and “Asia” were first used of the opposite shores of the Aegean and gradually extended to the land masses beyond them. The division between Europe and Asia beyond the Black Sea was generally a matter of speculation and hearsay rather than exact knowledge. These two maps represent the world as it was imagined by two early Milesian thinkers, **Anaximander** (c. 610-546 BCE) and **Hecataeus** (c. 550 to 476 BCE). In Anaximander’s very schematic map, the Phasis River is part of the boundary between Europe and Asia. Hecataeus’ map, apparently based in part on his own travels, made the Caspian Sea, which was thought to communicate with the Ocean, part of the boundary between Europe and Asia, together with the Caucasus Mountains and the Black (Euxine) Sea.



Anaximander (610-546 BCE)

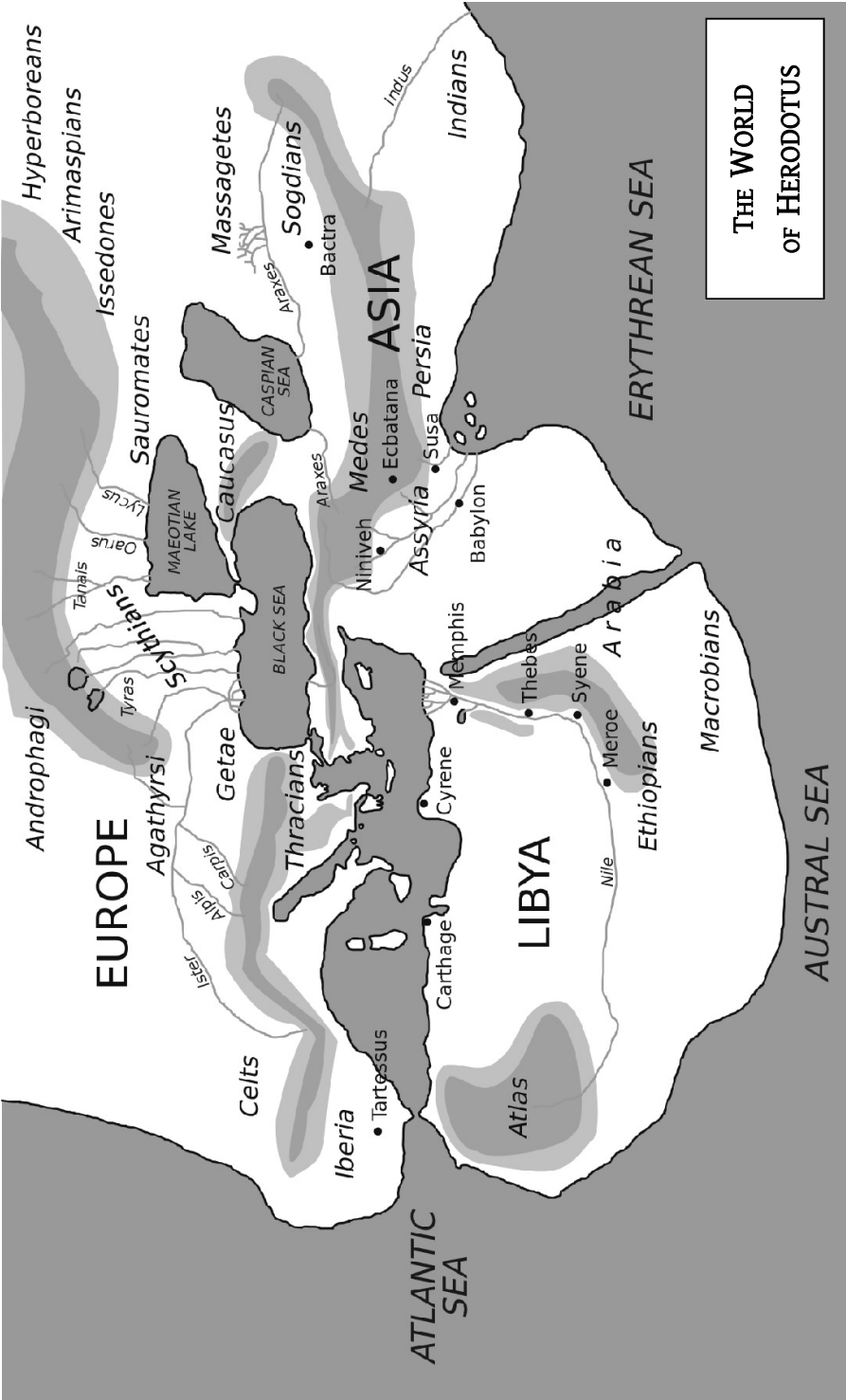


Hecataeus (c. 550-476 BCE)

Like Hecataeus, Herodotus imagined Europe to be comparable in length to Asia and Libya combined (the latter conceived of as a peninsula of Asia). In his fourth book he has this to say about the boundaries of the continents:

And I am not able to understand for what reason it is that to the Earth, which is one, three different names are given derived from women, and why there were set as boundaries to divide it the river Nile of Egypt and the Phasis in Colchis (or as some say the Maiotian river Tanais and the Kimmerian ferry); nor can I learn who those persons were who made the boundaries, or for what reason they gave the names.

The map on the next page represents the world of Herodotus, which is probably the closest to the idea of the author of AWP:



ἐρέω ὥς μοι δοκεῖ ἔχειν. τὴν Ἀσίην πλεῖστον διαφέρειν φημὶ τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐς τὰς φύσεις τῶν ζυμπάντων, τῶν τε ἐκ τῆς γῆς φυομένων καὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων: πολὺ γὰρ καλλίονα καὶ μέζονα πάντα γίνεται ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ, ἣ τε χώρα τῆς χώρας ἡμερωτέρη, καὶ τὰ ἥθεα τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἡπιώτερα καὶ εὐοργητότερα. τὸ δὲ αἷτιον τούτων ἡ κρήσις τῶν ὥρέων, ὅτι τοῦ ἡλίου ἐν μέσῳ τῶν ἀνατολέων κείται πρὸς τὴν ἡῶ, τοῦ τε ψυχροῦ πορρωτέρω: τὴν δὲ αὖξισιν καὶ ἡμερότητα παρέχει πλεῖστον ἀπάντων, ὁκόταν μηδὲν ἢ ἐπικρατέον βιαίως, ἀλλὰ παντὸς ἰσομοιρίῃ δυναστεύῃ. ἔχει δὲ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίην οὐ

αἷτιον, τό: a cause
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising, rise
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole
Ἀσίῃ, ἡ: Asia
αὖξισις, -ιος, ἡ: growth, increase
βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forcible, violent
διαφέρω: to differ
δυναστεύω: to be powerful, prevail
ἐπικρατέω: to rule over, dominate
εὐόργητος, -ον: good-tempered
Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe
ἥθος, -εος, τό: character, disposition
ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, tamed
ἡμερότης, -ητος, ἡ: tameness
ἡπιος, -η, -ον: gentle, mild, kind
ἡώς, ἡ: the dawn, the East

ἰσομοιρίῃ, ἡ: an equal share, balance
καλλίων, -ον: more beautiful (comp. of καλός)
κεῖμαι: to be laid, lie
κρήσις, -ιος, ἡ: a mixing, blending
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
ξύμπας, -πασα, -παν: all together
ὁκόταν: whenever
παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
πλεῖστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
πορρωτέρω: farther
φημί: to declare, say
φύω: to bring forth, produce, grow
χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἐρέω: fut. of λέγω, "I will say"

ἔχειν: "as it seems to me to be"

τῆς Εὐρώπης: gen. of comparison after διαφέρειν, "Asia differs from Europe"

ἐς τὰς φύσεις: "with respect to the natures of all things"

τῆς χώρας: gen. of comparison after ἡμερωτέρη, "more tame than our land"

κρήσις τῶν ὥρέων: "blending of the seasons," i.e. a temperate climate

ἐν μέσῳ: "midway between" + gen.

τῶν ἀνατολέων: "between (the winter and summer) risings"

κέεται: "because (Asia) is situated"

τοῦ ψυχροῦ: gen. of separation, "farther away from the cold"

ἡ ἐπικρατέον: periphrastic subj. in temporal cl., "whenever nothing is dominating forcibly"

παντὸς: objective gen., "a balance of everything"

δυναστεύῃ: pr. subj. also with ὁκόταν, "when balance prevails"

Hippocrates

πανταχῇ ὁμοίως, ἀλλ' ὅση μὲν τῆς χώρας ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται τοῦ
θερμοῦ καὶ τοῦ ψυχροῦ, αὕτη μὲν εὐκαρποτάτῃ ἐστὶ καὶ
εὐδενδροτάτῃ καὶ εὐδιεστάτῃ, καὶ ὕδασι καλλίστοισι κέχρηται
τοῖσί τε οὐρανίοισι καὶ τοῖς ἐκ τῆς γῆς. οὔτε γὰρ ὑπὸ τοῦ
θερμοῦ ἐκκέκασται λίην, οὔτε ὑπὸ αὐχμῶν καὶ ἀνυδρίας
ἀναξηραίνεται, οὔτε ὑπὸ ψύχεος βεβιασμένη οὔτε νοτία τε καὶ
διάβροχος ἐστὶν ὑπὸ τε ὄμβρων πολλῶν καὶ χιόνος, τὰ τε
ώραῖα αὐτόθι πολλὰ εἰκὸς γίνεσθαι, ὁκόσα τε ἀπὸ σπερμάτων,
καὶ ὁκόσα αὐτῇ ἢ γῇ ἀναδιδοῖ φυτά: ὧν τοῖς καρποῖσι

ἀναδίδωμι: to hold forth, bestow

ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up

ἀνυδρία, ἡ: lack of water, drought

αὐτόθι: on the spot, here

αὐχμός, ὁ: drought, squalor

βιάζω: to constrain, oppress

γῆ, ἡ: earth

διάβροχος, -ον: very wet, moist

εἰκός: likely

ἐκκαίω: to burn out, scorch

εὐδενδρος, -ον: well-wooded, full of trees

εὐδῖος, -ον: calm, peaceful

εὐκαρπος, -ον: rich in fruit, fruitful

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

καρπός, ὁ: fruit

κεῖμαι: to be laid, lie

λίην: very much, exceedingly

μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle

νοτία, ἡ: damp

ὄμβρος, ὁ: heavy rain

ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling, similar

ὅσος, -η, -ον: as much

οὐράνιος, -ον: heavenly, from the sky

πανταχῇ: everywhere

σπέρμα, -ατος, τό: seed

φυτόν, τό: plant

χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow

χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)

χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region

ψῦχος, -εος, τό: cold

ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

ώραῖος, -η, -ον: produced at the right
season

ἔχει ὁμοίως: “not everywhere do things *exist similarly*,” i.e. “it is not uniform”

κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίην: “with respect to Asia”

ὅση μὲν ... αὕτη μὲν: “as much (of the land) ... this part”

κέχρηται: perf. of *χρέομαι*, “it (this place) *has enjoyed* the best waters”

τοῖσί τε οὐρανίοισι καὶ τοῖς ἐκ τῆς γῆς: i.e. both rain and spring water

ἐκκέκασται: perf. pas. of *ἐκκαίω*, “neither has it been scorched...”

βεβιασμένη: perf. part., “having been oppressed”

τὰ ὠραῖα: neut. pl., “the harvests”

ὁκόσα φυτά: n. pl., “whatever plants”

αὐτῇ ἢ γῇ: “the earth itself”

ἀναδιδοῖ: thematic pr. (= *ἀναδίδωσι*)

ὧν: rel. pron., “of which (harvests)”

ἐς ἐπιτήδειον: “to a suitable (soil)”

τὰ ἐντρεφόμενα κτήνεα: “the cattle raised there (in temperate Asia)”

χρέονται ἄνθρωποι, ἡμεροῦντες ἐξ ἀγρίων, καὶ ἐς ἐπιτήδειον μεταφυτεύοντες· τὰ τε ἐντρεφόμενα κτήνεα εὐθηνεῖν εἰκὸς, καὶ μάλιστα τίκτειν τε πυκνότατα καὶ ἐκτρέφειν κάλλιστα· τοὺς τε ἀνθρώπους εὐτραφέας εἶναι, καὶ τὰ εἶδεα καλλίστους, καὶ μεγέθει μεγίστους, καὶ ἥκιστα διαφόρους ἐς τὰ τε εἶδεα αὐτῶν καὶ τὰ μεγέθεα· εἰκὸς τε τὴν χώραν ταύτην τοῦ ἡρος ἐγγύτατα εἶναι κατὰ τὴν φύσιν καὶ τὴν μετριότητα τῶν ὥρέων. τὸ δὲ ἀνδρεῖον καὶ τὸ ταλαίπωρον καὶ τὸ ἔμπονον καὶ τὸ θυμοειδὲς οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο ἐν τοιαύτῃ φύσει ἐγγίνεσθαι οὔτε ὁμοφύλου

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: living in the fields, wild
ἀνδρεῖον, τό: manliness, courage
διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike
δύναμαι: to be able, capable (+ inf.)
ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place,
happen
ἐγγύς: near, nigh, at hand
εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form, shape, appearance
εἰκὸς: likely (+ inf.)
ἐκτρέφω: to bring up, rear up
ἔμπονος, τό: patience in work, industry
ἐντρέφω: to bring up in, raise in
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: useful, suitable
εὐθηνέω: to thrive, flourish, prosper
εὐτραφής, -ές: well-fed, well-grown,
thriving

ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least
ἡμερώω: to tame, make tame
ἡρ, ἡρος, τό: spring
θυμοειδὲς, τό: spirit, passion
κτήνος, -εος, τό: a beast, (pl.) cattle
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, stature
μεταφυτεύω: to transplant
μετριότης, -ητος, ἡ: moderation,
mildness
ὁμόφυλος, -ον: of the same race, native
πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, dense, strong
ταλαίπωρον, τό: suffering, hardness
τίκτω: to give birth, bear
χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)
χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region
ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

τε πυκνότατα καὶ κάλλιστα: adj., “and to bear the strongest and finest (offspring),” or adv., “they bear (offspring) very frequently and well”

ἀνθρώπους εἶναι: acc. + inf., “men are”

μεγέθει: dat. of specification, “very large in stature”

ἐς τὰ τε εἶδεα...μεγέθεα: “differing little with respect to their appearances and statures”

τοῦ ἡρος: gen. after ἐγγύτατα, “very near to spring” i.e. between winter and summer

ἐγγύτατα: n. pl. pred. after εἶναι, “that land is very near”

οὐκ ἂν δύναίτο: potential opt., “it may not be possible for manliness, etc. to occur”

οὔτε ὁμοφύλου οὔτε ἄλλοφύλου: “the nature neither of a native nor a foreigner.”
i.e., the native peoples of Asia as well as foreign born immigrants, such as the Greek colonists in Asia Minor.

κρατεῖν: pr. inf. after ἀνάγκη, “it is necessary that pleasure rule”

Hippocrates

οὕτε ἄλλοφύλου, ἀλλὰ τὴν ἡδονὴν ἀνάγκη κρατεῖν ... διότι πολύμορφα γίνεται τὰ ἐν τοῖσι θηρίοισιν.

Concerning those who dwell on the eastern boundaries between Europe and Asia.

[13.] περὶ μὲν οὖν Αἰγυπτίων καὶ Λιβύων οὕτως ἔχειν μοι δοκεῖ. περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐν δεξιῇ τοῦ ἡλίου τῶν ἀνατολέων τῶν θερινῶν μέχρι Μαιώτιδος λίμνης — οὗτος γὰρ ὄρος τῆς Εὐρώπης καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας — ὧδε ἔχει περὶ αὐτῶν· τὰ δὲ ἔθνεα ταῦτα διάφορα αὐτὰ ἐωυτῶν μᾶλλον ἐστὶ τῶν προδιηγημένων, διὰ τὰς μεταβολὰς τῶν ὥρέων καὶ τῆς χώρας τὴν φύσιν. ἔχει δὲ καὶ κατὰ τὴν γῆν ὁμοίως ἅπερ καὶ κατὰ τοὺς ἄλλους ἀνθρώπους. ὅκου γὰρ αἱ ὥραι μεγίστας μεταβολὰς ποιεῖνται καὶ πυκνοτάτας, ἐκεῖ καὶ ἡ χώρα ἀγριωτάτη καὶ

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: wild, savage
 Αἰγύπτιος, ὁ: an Egyptian
 ἄλλοφύλος, -ον: of another race, foreign
 ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
 ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising, rise
 Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
 γῆ, ἡ: earth
 δεξιός, -ή, -όν: right, on the right side
 διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike
 διότι: for the reason that, since
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a nation, people
 Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe
 ἡδονή, ἡ: delight, enjoyment, pleasure
 θερινός, -ή, -όν: of the summer, in summer

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
 κρατέω: to be strong, rule
 Λίβυς, -υος, ὁ: a Libyan
 λίμνη, ἡ: a pool, lake
 μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
 μέχρι: up to, so far as
 ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
 ὄρος, ὁ: a boundary, landmark
 ποιέω: to make
 πολύμορφος, -ον: multiform, of many shapes
 προδιηγέομαι: to relate before
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, frequent, strong
 χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region
 ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

There is a lacuna after *κρατεῖν* where the text treats the Egyptians and Libyans. *μέχρι Μαιώτιδος λίμνης*: “as far as Lake Maeotis,” the modern Sea of Azov, north of the Black Sea, which was thought to communicate with the northern ocean and to be the dividing line between Europe and Asia
τῶν προδιηγημένων: perf. part. gen. of comparison, “more different from each other than those described above”
ἅπερ: acc. of resp. after *ὁμοίως*, “similarly with respect to those very things as”
ποιέονται: pr. mid., “where the seasons experience” + acc.
εὐρήσεις: 2 s. fut., “you will find”

ἀνωμαλωτάτη ἐστίν· καὶ εὐρήσεις ὄρεά τε πλείστα καὶ δασέα,
καὶ πεδία, καὶ λειμῶνας ἐόντας· ὅκου δὲ αἱ ὦραι μὴ μέγα
ἀλλάσσουσιν, ἐκείνοις ἡ χώρα ὁμαλωτάτη ἐστίν. οὕτω δὲ ἔχει
καὶ περὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων, εἴ τις βούλεται ἐνθυμέσθαι. εἰσὶ γὰρ
φύσεις, αἱ μὲν ὄρεσιν ἐοικυῖαι δενδρώδεσί τε καὶ ἐφύδροισιν,
αἱ δὲ λεπτοῖσί τε καὶ ἀνύδροις, αἱ δὲ λειμακεστέροις τε καὶ
ἐλώδεσι, αἱ δὲ πεδίῳ τε καὶ ψιλῇ καὶ ξηρῇ γῇ. αἱ γὰρ ὦραι αἱ
μεταλλάσσουσιν τῆς μορφῆς τὴν φύσιν εἰσὶ διάφοροι· ἦν δὲ
διάφοροι ἔωσι μέγα σφέων αὐτῶν, διαφοραὶ καὶ πλείονες
γίνονται τοῖσιν εἵδεσι.

ἀλλάσσω: to change, alter	ἔφυδρος, -ον: wet, moist, rainy
ἄνυδρος, -ον: waterless, dry	λειμακεστέρος, -ον: more grassy
ἀνώματος, -ον: uneven, irregular	λειμών, -ῶνος, ὅ: a meadow, grassy place
βούλομαι: to will, wish	λεπτός, -ή, -όν: small, puny, slight
γῆ, ἡ: earth	μεταλλάσσω: to change, alter
δασύς, -εῖη, -ύ: hairy, shaggy, wooded	μορφή, ἡ: a form, shape
δενδρώδης, -ες: tree-like	ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry
διαφορά, ἡ: a difference, distinction	ὁμαλός, -ή, -όν: even, level
διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike	ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form, shape, appearance	πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy	πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
ἐνθυμέομαι: to consider, reflect on, ponder	πλείων: more, greater
ἐοικώς, -υῖα, -ός: like, resembling (+ dat.)	χώρη, ἡ: a space, place, region
εὕρισκω: to find	ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare
	ῶρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἐόντας: agreeing only with λειμῶνας but understood with the other items as well.

“you will find that these are”

μὴ μέγα: adv., “the seasons differ not much”

αἱ μὲν... αἱ δὲ: “some natures ... others”

αἱ μεταλλάσσουσιν: attr. part., “the seasons which alter”

ἦν ἔωσι: pr. subj. of εἰμί in general cond., “if they (the seasons) are very different”

τοῖσιν εἵδεσι: dat. of poss., “the differences of the forms (of the humans)”

ὀλίγον: adv., “differ slightly”

Hippocrates

The peculiar “Longheads” and the natural and cultural forces that affect their appearance.

[14.] καὶ ὁκόσα μὲν ὀλίγον διαφέρει τῶν ἐθνέων παραλείψω: ὁκόσα δὲ μεγάλα ἢ φύσει ἢ νόμῳ, ἐρέω περὶ αὐτῶν ὡς ἔχει. καὶ πρῶτον περὶ τῶν Μακροκεφάλων. τούτων γὰρ οὐκ ἔστιν ἄλλο ἔθνος ὁμοίας τὰς κεφαλὰς ἔχον οὐδέν. τὴν μὲν γὰρ ἀρχὴν ὁ νόμος αἰτιώτατος ἐγένετο τοῦ μήκεος τῆς κεφαλῆς, νῦν δὲ καὶ ἡ φύσις συμβάλλεται τῷ νόμῳ: τοὺς γὰρ μακροτάτην ἔχοντας τὴν κεφαλὴν γενναιοτάτους ἡγέονται. ἔχει δὲ περὶ νόμου ὧδε: τὸ παιδίον ὁκόταν γένηται τάχιστα, τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ ἔτι ἀπαλὴν εἶδον, μαλθακοῦ ἐόντος,

αἷτιος, -η, -ον: blameworthy, responsible

ἀπαλός, -ή, -όν: soft to the touch, tender

γενναῖος, -η, -ον: noble, wellborn

διαφέρω: to differ

ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a nation, people

ἡγέομαι: to think, deem

κεφαλή, ἡ: a head

μακροκέφαλος, -ον: long-headed

μακρός, -ή, -όν: long

μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft, tender

μήκος, -εος, τό: length

νόμος, ὁ: a usage, custom, law

ὁκόταν: whenever (+ subj.)

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small

ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: similar, resembling

παραλείπω: to set aside, leave remaining

συμβάλλω: to throw together, join together

ταχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: quick

ὧδε: so, thus

μεγάλα: (sc. διαφέρει) “the ones which differ greatly”

ἐρέω: fut. of λέγω, “I will speak”

περὶ τῶν Μακροκεφάλων: “about the Longheads”

τούτων: gen. after ὁμοίας, “heads similar to them,” where the dative is more common

ἔχον: pr. part nom. modifying ἔθνος, “there is no other race possessing heads...”

οὐδέν: adv., “not at all”

τὴν ἀρχὴν: “at first”

ἐγένετο: ao., “became” or just “was”

συμβάλλεται: mid. of συμβάλλω, “nature contributes to the custom”

γενναιοτάτους: pred. acc., “they deem them the most noble”

ὁκόταν γένηται: ao. subj. of γίγνομαι in temp. cl., “whenever a child is born”

εἶδον: pr. part. circumstantial, “while it is still soft”

μαλθακοῦ ἐόντος: gen. abs., “the child being tender”

τῇσι χερσὶ: dat. of means, “with their hands”

ἀναπλάσσουνσι τῇσι χερσὶ, καὶ ἀναγκάζουσιν ἐς τὸ μῆκος αὔξεσθαι, δεσμά τε προσφέροντες καὶ τεχνήματα ἐπιτήδεια, ὑφ' ὧν τὸ μὲν σφαιροειδὲς τῆς κεφαλῆς κακοῦται, τὸ δὲ μῆκος αὔξεται. οὕτως τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁ νόμος κατειργάσατο, ὥστε ὑπὸ βίης τοιαύτην τὴν φύσιν γενέσθαι: τοῦ δὲ χρόνου προϊόντος, ἐν φύσει ἐγένετο, ὥστε τὸν νόμον μηκέτι ἀναγκάζειν. ὁ γὰρ γόνος πανταχόθεν ἔρχεται τοῦ σώματος, ἀπὸ τε τῶν ὑγιερῶν ὑγιερὸς, ἀπὸ τε τῶν νοσερῶν νοσερός. εἰ οὖν γίνονται ἔκ τε τῶν φαλακρῶν φαλακροὶ, καὶ ἐκ γλαυκῶν γλαυκοὶ, καὶ ἐκ διεστραμμένων στρεβλοὶ, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος, καὶ περὶ τῆς ἄλλης μορφῆς ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος, τί κωλύει καὶ ἐκ μακροκεφάλου

ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel
 ἀναπλάσσω: remodel
 αὔξομαι: to make large, increase
 βίη, ἡ: force, strength
 γλαυκός, -ή, -όν: gray, gray or blue-eyed
 γόνος, ὁ: seed
 δέσμα, -ατος, ὁ: a band, bond
 διαστρέφω: to twist about, distort
 ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: made for a purpose, suitable, fit
 ἔρχομαι: to come, go
 κακῶ: to mistreat, ruin
 κατειργάζομαι: to achieve, accomplish
 κεφαλὴ, ἡ: a head
 κωλύω: to hinder, check, prevent (+ inf.)
 μακροκέφαλος, -ον: long-headed
 μηκέτι: no more, no longer
 μῆκος, -εος, τό: length

μορφή, ἡ: form, shape
 νόμος, ὁ: a usage, custom, law
 νοσερός, -ή, -όν: sickly, diseased
 πανταχόθεν: from all places, on every side
 πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number, multitude
 προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
 προσφέρω: to bring to, apply
 στρεβλός, -ή, -όν: twisted, squinting
 σφαιροειδής, τό: roundness
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
 τέχνημα, -ατος, τό: a device
 ὑγιερός, -ή, -όν: healthy, wholesome
 φαλακρός, -ή, -όν: baldheaded, bald
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand
 χρόνος, ὁ: time

ὑφ' ὧν: rel. pron., "by means of which (devices)"
 τὴν ἀρχὴν: "at first"
 κατειργάσατο: ao., "custom achieved"
 ὥστε γενέσθαι: ao. inf. in res. cl., "so that such a nature became"
 τοῦ χρόνου προϊόντος: gen. abs., "and as time went on"
 ὥστε ἀναγκάζειν: res. cl., "so that custom was no longer necessary"
 διεστραμμένων: perf. part. gen. pl., "from those who are twisted (in their eyes)"
 i.e. squinting
 ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος: "for the most part"
 ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος: "the same account"
 γίνεσθαι: pr. inf. after κωλύει, "prevents from happening"

Hippocrates

μακροκέφαλον γίνεσθαι; νῦν δὲ ὁμοίως οὐκέτι γίνονται ὡς πρότερον: ὁ γὰρ νόμος οὐκέτι ἰσχύει διὰ τὴν ὁμιλίην τῶν ἀνθρώπων.

Concerning those who dwell along the Phasis River.

[15.] περὶ μὲν οὖν τούτων οὕτως ἔχειν μοι δοκεῖ. περὶ δὲ τῶν ἐν Φάσει, ἢ χώρῃ ἐκείνῃ ἐλώδης ἐστὶ καὶ θερμὴ καὶ ὑδατείνῃ καὶ δασεῖα· ὄμβροι τε αὐτόθι γίνονται πᾶσαν ὥρην πολλοὶ τε καὶ ἰσχυροὶ· ἢ τε δίαίτα τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἐν τοῖς ἔλεσιν ἐστίν, τὰ τε οἰκήματα ξύλινα καὶ καλάμινα ἐν τοῖς ὕδασι μεμηχανημένα· ὀλίγη τε χρέονται βαδίσει κατὰ τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὸ ἐμπόριον, ἀλλὰ μονοξύλοις διαπλέουσιν ἄνω καὶ κάτω: διώρυγες γὰρ πολλαὶ εἰσι. τὰ δὲ ὕδατα θερμὰ καὶ

ἄνω: upwards
αὐτόθι: on the spot
βαδίσεις, -ιος, ἢ: a walking, going
δασύς, -εῖα, -ύ: shaggy, rough
δίαίτα, ἢ: a way of living, mode of life
διαπλέω: to sail across
διώρυξ, -υγος, ἢ: a trench, conduit, canal
ἔλος, -εος, τό: low ground by rivers, a marsh-meadow
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy, fenny
ἐμπόριον, τό: the market
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty
ἰσχύω: to be strong
καλάμινος, -η, -ον: made of reed
κάτω: down, downwards

μηχανάομαι: to prepare, make ready
μονόξυλος, -ον: made from a solid trunk
νόμος, ὁ: a usage, custom, law
ξύλινος, -η, -ον: of wood, wooden
οἴκημα, -ατος, τό: a dwelling place
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, scanty, small
ὄμβρος, ὁ: heavy rain
ὁμιλίη, ἢ: a being together, intercourse
ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
πρότερος, -η, -ον: before, former
ὑδατείνος, -ή, -όν: watery, moist
Φᾶσις, -ιος, ὁ: the river Phasis
χρέομαι: to use (+ dat.)
χώρη, ἢ: a space, place, region
ὥρη, ἢ: a period, season

ὡς πρότερον: i.e., it is not as prevalent as *before*
τούτων: "about these," i.e. the "Longheads"
τῶν ἐν Φάσει: "those on the Phasis river"
πᾶσαν ὥρην: acc. of duration of time, "rains occur *through every season*"
μεμηχανημένα: perf. part., "dwellings *constructed* in the water"
βαδίσει: dat. of means after *χρέονται*, "they use *little walking*"
μονοξύλοισι: boats crafted from a single, hollowed out log, as a dugout canoe

στάσιμα πίνουσιν, ὑπὸ τε τοῦ ἡλίου σηπόμενα, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν ὀμβρων ἐπαυξόμενα. αὐτός τε ὁ Φάσις στασιμώτατος πάντων τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ ῥέων ἡπιώτατα: οἷ τε καρποὶ γινόμενοι αὐτόθι πάντες ἀναλδέες εἰσὶ, καὶ τεθλυσμένοι, καὶ ἀτελέες, ὑπὸ πολυπληθείης τοῦ ὕδατος: διὸ καὶ οὐ πεπαίνονται: ἡὲρ τε πολὺς κατέχει τὴν χώραν ἀπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων. διὰ ταύτας δὴ τὰς προφάσεις τὰ εἶδεα ἀπηλλαγμένα τῶν λοιπῶν ἀνθρώπων ἔχουσιν οἱ Φασιηνοί: τὰ τε γὰρ μεγέθεα μεγάλοι, τὰ πάχεα δ' ὑπερπάχητες: ἄρθρον τε κατάδηλον οὐδὲν, οὐδὲ φλέψ: τὴν τε

ἀναλδής, -ές: not thriving, feeble
ἀπαλλάσσω: to remove, differ from (+
gen.)

ἄρθρον, τό: a joint

ἀτελής, -ές: without end, incomplete

αὐτόθι: on the spot

διό: wherefore, on which account

εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure

ἐπαυξω: to increase, enlarge, augment

ἡὲρ, ἡέρος, ὁ: air, vapor

ἡπιος, -η, -ον: gentle, mild, kind

θηλύνω: to make womanish, soften

καρπός, ὁ: the wrist

κατάδηλος, -ον: quite manifest, plain,
visible

καταχέω: to pour down upon, pour over

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: size, height, stature

ὄμβρος, ὁ: heavy rain

πάχος, τό: thickness

πεπαίνω: to ripen, make ripe

πίνω: to drink

πολυπλήθεια, ἡ: a great quantity

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: an alleged cause

ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, gush

σήπω: to make rotten

στάσιμος, -ον: standing, stationary

ὑπέρπαχς, -υ: very fat

Φασιηνοί, οἱ: those living along the Phasis
river

Φᾶσις, -ιος, ὁ: the river Phasis

φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein

χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region

σηπόμενα, ἐπαυξόμενα: pr. pas. part., "waters being putrefied by the sun and swollen by rains"

αὐτός: intens., "The River Phasis itself"

πάντων τῶν ποταμῶν: partitive gen., "the most stagnant of all rivers"

ἡπιώτατα: super. adv. modifying ῥέων, "running most gently"

τεθλυσμένοι: pf. part. of θηλύνω, "the fruits are softened"

ἡὲρ...ἀπὸ τῶν ὑδάτων: "vapor from the waters," referring to fog generated by the Phasis

ἀπηλλαγμένα: perf. part., "physiques removed from" i.e. different from + gen.

τῶν λοιπῶν ἀνθρώπων: gen. of separation after ἀπηλλαγμένα, "forms different from the rest of men"

τὰ μεγέθεα, τὰ πάχεα: acc. of resp., "large in stature and very fat in thickness"

ὑπερπάχητες: nom. pl. masc., "very fat"

Hippocrates

χροιὴν ὡχρὴν ἔχουσιν, ὥσπερ ὑπὸ ἱκτέρου ἐχόμενοι:
 φθέγγονται τε βαρύτατον ἀνθρώπων, τῷ ἡέρι χρεώμενοι οὐ
 λαμπρῷ, ἀλλὰ νοτῶδει τε καὶ θολερῷ· πρὸς τε τὸ ταλαιπωρεῖν
 τὸ σῶμα ἀργότεροι πεφύκασιν: αἱ τε ὦραι οὐ πολὺ
 μεταλλάσσουν, οὔτε πρὸς τὸ πνίγος, οὔτε πρὸς τὸ ψύχος: τά
 τε πνεύματα τὰ πολλὰ νότια, πλὴν αὔρης μιῆς ἐπιχωρίης:
 αὕτη δὲ πνεῖ ἐνίοτε βίαιος, καὶ χαλεπὴ, καὶ θερμὴ, καὶ
 Κέγχρονα ὀνομάζουσι τοῦτο τὸ πνεῦμα. ὁ δὲ βορέης οὐ
 σφόδρα ἀφικνεῖται: ὁκόταν δὲ πνέῃ, ἀσθενὴς καὶ βληχρὸς.

ἀργότερος, -η, -ον: wild
 ἀσθενής, -ές: weak, feeble
 αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
 ἀφικνέομαι: to come to
 βαρὺς, -εῖα, -ύ: heavy
 βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forcible, violent
 βληχρὸς, -ή, -όν: faint, slight
 βορέης, -έω, ὁ: north wind
 εἷς, μίη, ἕν: one
 ἐνίοτε: sometimes
 ἐπιχωρίος, -η, -ον: of a place, local
 ἡήρ, ἡέρος, ὁ: air, vapor
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
 θολερὸς, -ή, -όν: foul, turbid
 ἱκτερος, ὁ: jaundice
 Κέγχρων, ὁ: the Cenchron wind
 λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant
 μεταλλάσσω: to change, alter

νότιος, -ή, -ον: wet, moist, southerly
 νοτῶδης, -ες: moist
 ὀνομάζω: to name, call
 πλὴν: except (+ gen.)
 πνέω: to blow
 πνίγος, -εος, τό: stifling heat
 σφόδρα: very, very much, exceedingly,
 violently
 ταλαιπωρέω: to endure hard labor
 φθέγγομαι: to utter a sound or voice
 φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: hard to bear
 χρέομαι: to make use of (+ dat.)
 χροιή, ἡ: the surface of a body, the skin
 ψύχος, -εος, τό: cold
 ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season
 ὡχρός, -ή, -όν: pale, wan, sallow

ἐχόμενοι: pr. pas. part., “as though being held by” i.e. “suffering from” + gen.

φθέγγονται βαρύτατον: “they have the deepest voices”

τῷ ἡέρι: dat. with χρεώμενοι, “enjoying (i.e. breathing) air”

τὸ ταλαιπωρεῖν: art. inf., “toward working hard”

τὸ σῶμα: acc. resp., “physical work”

πεφύκασιν: perf. of φύω, “they are by nature”

τὰ νότια: “the southerly winds,” which are moist

Κέγχρονα: acc. pred., “they call this wind Cenchron”

ὁκόταν πνέῃ: pr. subj. in indef. temp. cl., “whenever (the North wind) blows, it is...”

On Airs, Waters, and Places

How the environment affects the character of Asians and Europeans.

[16] και περὶ μὲν τῆς φύσιος τῆς διαφορῆς καὶ τῆς μορφῆς τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ καὶ τῇ Εὐρώπῃ οὕτως ἔχει. περὶ δὲ τῆς ἀθυμίας τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ τῆς ἀνανδρείης, ὅτι ἀπολεμώτεροί εἰσι τῶν Εὐρωπαίων οἱ Ἀσιηνοὶ, καὶ ἡμερώτεροι τὰ ἥθεα, αἱ ὥραι αἴτιαι μάλιστα, οὐ μεγάλας τὰς μεταβολὰς ποιούμεναι, οὔτε ἐπὶ τὸ θερμὸν, οὔτε ἐπὶ τὸ ψυχρὸν, ἀλλὰ παραπλησίως. οὐ γὰρ γίνονται ἐκπλήξεις τῆς γνώμης, οὔτε μετὰστασις ἰσχυρὴ τοῦ σώματος, ἀφ' ὧν εἰκὸς τὴν ὀργὴν ἀγριοῦσθαι τε καὶ τοῦ ἀγνώμονος καὶ θυμοειδέος μετέχειν μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ ἔοντα. αἱ γὰρ μεταβολαί

ἀγνώμων, -ον: ill-judging, senseless
 ἀγριόω: to make wild or savage
 ἀθυμία, ἡ: want of heart, faintheartedness
 αἰεὶ: always, for ever
 αἴτιος, -η, -ον: blameworthy, culpable
 ἀνανδρεία, ἡ: want of manhood
 ἀπόλεμος, -ον: unwarlike, unfit for war
 Ἀσίῃ, ἡ: Asia
 Ἀσιηνός, -ή, -όν: Asian
 γνώμη, ἡ: a mind, judgment
 διαφορῆ, ἡ: difference, distinction
 εἰκός: likely
 ἐκπληξίς, -ιος, ἡ: a disturbance
 Εὐρωπαῖος, -η, -ον: European
 Εὐρώπῃ, ἡ: Europe

ἥθος, -εος, τό: an accustomed place
 ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, tamed, reclaimed
 θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
 θυμοειδής, -ές: high-spirited, courageous
 ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty
 μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
 μετὰστασις, -ιος, ἡ: a change
 μετέχω: to partake of, take part in (+ gen.)
 μορφή, ἡ: form, shape
 ὀργή, ἡ: temperament, disposition, nature
 παραπλησίως: adv., equably
 ποιέω: to make
 ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
 ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

περὶ τῆς διαφορῆς: “concerning the difference” + gen.

οὕτως ἔχει: “so it is”

τῶν: “the form of those (people) in Asia and Europe”

τῶν Εὐρωπαίων: gen. of comparison, “more unwarlike than the Europeans”

τὰ ἥθεα: acc. of resp., “gentler in their disposition”

αἴτιαι: pred. acc., “the seasons are responsible”

ποιούμεναι: mid. part. f. pl., “making changes”

ἀφ' ὧν: rel. pron., “from which”

ἀγριοῦσθαι: pr. pas. inf. after εἰκός, “likely to be made wild”

μᾶλλον ἢ: “rather than”

ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ αἰεὶ: “being always in the same” i.e. “being perpetually in the same state”

Hippocrates

εἰσι τῶν πάντων, αἷ τε ἐπεγείρουσαι τὴν γνώμην τῶν ἀνθρώπων, καὶ οὐκ ἐῷσαι ἀτρεμίζειν. διὰ ταύτας ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ τὰς προφάσεις ἀναλκας εἶναι τὸ γένος τὸ Ἀσιηνόν: καὶ προσέτι διὰ τοὺς νόμους. τῆς γὰρ Ἀσίης τὰ πολλὰ βασιλεύεται. ὅκου δὲ μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐωυτῶν εἰσὶ καρτεροὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι μηδὲ αὐτόνομοι, ἀλλὰ δεσπόζονται, οὐ περὶ τούτου αὐτοῖσιν ὁ λόγος ἐστίν, ὅκως τὰ πολέμια ἀσκήσωσιν, ἀλλ' ὅκως μὴ δόξωσι μάχιμοι εἶναι. οἱ γὰρ κίνδυνοι οὐχ ὅμοιοι εἰσίν: τοὺς μὲν γὰρ στρατεύεσθαι εἰκὸς καὶ ταλαιπωρεῖν καὶ ἀποθνήσκειν ἐξ ἀνάγκης ὑπὲρ τῶν δεσποτέων, ἅπο τε παιδίων

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀναλκής, -ές: feeble
ἀποθνήσκω: to die
Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
Ἀσιηνός, -ή, -όν: Asian
ἀσκέω: to practice, train
ἀτρεμίζω: to keep quiet
αὐτόνομος, -ον: living under one's own laws, independent
βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
γένος, -εος, τό: race, stock, family
γνώμη, ἡ: a mind, judgment
δεσπόζω: to rule
δεσπότης, -ου, ό: a master
ἐάω: to allow

εἰκός: likely
ἐπεγείρω: to awaken, wake up, rouse
καρτερός, -ή, -όν: in control of (+ gen.)
κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk
μάχιμος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
νόμος, ό: custom, law
ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
παῖδιον, τό: young child
πολέμιος, -η, -ον: of or belonging to war
προσέτι: in addition, besides
πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: alleged cause,
στρατεύω: to serve in war
ταλαιπωρέω: to suffer hardship or distress

ἐπεγείρουσαι, ἐῷσαι: pr. part. f. pl., “which rouse... and do not permit...”

τὰ πολλὰ: “the majority of Asia”

βασιλεύεται: pas. of βασιλεύω, “is ruled over by kings,”

δεσπόζονται: pr. pas., “are mastered”

οὐ περὶ τούτου: “not about this” namely, the questions that follow

ὁ λόγος ἐστίν: “their concern is”

ὅκως ἀσκήσωσιν, ὅκως μὴ δόξωσι: ao. subj. of deliberative questions retained in indirect question. “how they might practice... how they might not seem to be...”

τοὺς μὲν στρατεύεσθαι: acc. + inf. after εἰκός, “it is likely that these serve as soldiers”

ἐξ ἀνάγκης: “by force”

ὑπὲρ τῶν δεσποτέων: “for the sake of their masters”

καὶ γυναικὸς ἐόντας καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν φίλων: καὶ ὁκόσα μὲν ἂν
χρηστὰ καὶ ἀνδρεῖα ἐργάσωνται, οἱ δεσπότες ἀπ' αὐτῶν
αὔξονται τε καὶ ἐκφύονται: τοὺς δὲ κινδύνους καὶ θανάτους
αὐτοὶ καρποῦνται: ἔτι δὲ πρὸς τούτοις τῶν τοιούτων
ἀνθρώπων ἀνάγκη ἐρημοῦσθαι τὴν γῆν ὑπὸ τε πολέμων καὶ
ἀργίης: ὥστε, καὶ εἴ τις φύσει πέφυκεν ἀνδρεῖος καὶ εὖψυχος,
ἀποτρέπεσθαι τὴν γνώμην ὑπὸ τῶν νόμων. μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον
τούτων: ὁκόσοι γὰρ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ Ἕλληνες ἢ βάρβαροι μὴ
δεσπόζονται, ἀλλ' αὐτόνομοι εἰσι καὶ ἐωντοῖσι ταλαιπωρεῦσιν,
οὗτοι μαχιμώτατοί εἰσι πάντων: τοὺς γὰρ κινδύνους ἐωντῶν

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀνδρεῖος, -η, -ον: manly
ἀποτρέπω: to turn
ἀργίη, ἡ: lack of cultivation
Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
αὔξω: to make large, increase, augment
αὐτόνομος, -ον: independent
βάρβαρος, ὁ: a barbarian
γῆ, ἡ: earth
γνώμη, ἡ: a mind
δεσπόζω: to rule
δεσπότης, -ου, ὁ: a master
ἐκφύω: to grow from, enlarge
Ἕλλην, ὁ: a Greek
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor

ἐρημόω: to strip bare, to desolate, lay
waste
εὖψυχος, -ον: courageous
θάνατος, ὁ: death
καρπύω: to harvest
κίνδυνος, ὁ: a danger
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
μάχιμος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike
νόμος, ὁ: custom, law, ordinance
πολέμιος, ὁ: enemy
ταλαιπωρέω: to suffer hardship or
distress
τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
φίλος, -η, -ον: loved, beloved, dear
φύω: to grow, be born
χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful

ἐόντας: pr. part. acc. m. pl. modifying τοὺς (sc. ἀνθρώπους), “while being away
from their children, etc.”

ὁκόσα ἂν ἐργάσωνται: ao. subj. in gen. rel. cl., “whatever things they do”

τοὺς δὲ κινδύνους: “but the dangers...” answering to τοὺς μὲν above

αὐτοὶ: “they themselves” (i.e. the subjects)

ἀπ' αὐτῶν: “from them” (i.e. the deeds)

πρὸς τούτοις: “in addition to these things”

ἐρημοῦσθαι τὴν γῆν: acc. + inf. after ἀνάγκη, “it is necessary that the land be
empty”

ὥστε ... ἀποτρέπεσθαι: pr. inf. in res. cl., “so that his mind is turned”

φύσει: dat. of means, “by nature,” i.e. “naturally”

εἴ τις πέφυκεν: perf. of φύω, “if someone has been born”

Hippocrates

πέρι κινδυνεύουσι, καὶ τῆς ἀνδρείης αὐτοὶ τὰ ἄθλα φέρονται, καὶ τῆς δειλίας τὴν ζημίην ὡσαύτως. εὐρήσεις δὲ καὶ τοὺς Ἀσιηνοὺς διαφέροντας αὐτοὺς ἐωντῶν, τοὺς μὲν βελτίονας, τοὺς δὲ φαυλοτέρους ἐόντας· τούτων δὲ αἱ μεταβολαὶ αἷται τῶν ὠρέων, ὥσπερ μοι εἴρηται ἐν τοῖσι προτέροισι.

The case of the Scythian race of the Sauromatae.

[17.] καὶ περὶ μὲν τῶν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίῃ οὕτως ἔχει. ἐν δὲ τῇ Εὐρώπῃ ἐστὶν ἔθνος Σκυθικὸν, ὃ περὶ τὴν λίμνην οἰκεῖ τὴν Μαιῶτιν, διαφέρον τῶν ἐθνέων τῶν ἄλλων, Σαυρομάται καλεῦνται. τούτων αἱ γυναῖκες ἱππάζονται τε καὶ τοξεύουσι, καὶ ἀκοντίζουσιν ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων, καὶ μάχονται τοῖσι

ἄθλον, τό: the prize of contest
 αἷτιος, -η, -ον: responsible
 ἀκοντίζω: to hurl a javelin
 ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness
 Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
 Ἀσιηνός, -ή, -όν: Asian
 βελτίων, -ον: better
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
 δειλίη, ἡ: cowardice
 διαφέρω: to differ from (+ *gen.*)
 ἔθνος, -εος, τό: a nation, people
 εὐρίσκω: to find
 Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe
 ζημία, ἡ: loss, damage
 ἱππάζομαι: to drive horses, ride

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse
 κινδυνεύω: to run the risk
 λίμνη, ἡ: a pool, lake
 μάχομαι: to fight (+ *dat.*)
 μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
 οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy
 πρότερος, -η, -ον: before
 Σαυρομάτης, ὁ: a Sarmatian
 Σκυθικός, -ή, -όν: Scythian
 τοξεύω: to shoot a bow
 φαῦλος, -η, -ον: mean, bad
 φέρομαι: to bear for oneself, to win
 ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season
 ὡσαύτως: in like manner, just so

ἐωντῶν πέρι: anastrophe, “for themselves”
 αὐτοὶ: “these very ones bear...”
 εὐρήσεις: 2. s. fut., “you will find...”
 αὐτοὺς: “the Asians *themselves*”
 τοὺς μὲν...τοὺς δὲ: “some being better, others being worse”
 αἷται: pred., “are responsible for” + *gen.*
 εἴρηται: perf. pas. of λέγω, “as it *has been said*”
 δ: rel. pron., “a race, *which* lives”
 λίμνην Μαιῶτιν: modern day Sea of Azov
 καλεῦνται: (= καλοῦνται) “are called”
 Σαυρομάται: cf. Her. Hist. 4, 110-17

πολεμίοις, ἕως ἂν παρθένοι ἔωσιν. οὐκ ἀποπαρθνεύονται δὲ
μέχρις ἂν τῶν πολεμίων τρεῖς ἀποκτείνωσι, καὶ οὐ πρότερον
συννοικέουσιν ἢ περ τὰ ἱερὰ θύσωσιν τὰ ἔννομα. ἡ δ' ἂν ἄνδρα
ἑωυτῇ ἄρῃται, παύεται ἵππαζομένη, ἕως ἂν μὴ ἀνάγκη
καταλάβῃ παγκοίνου στρατείας. τὸν δεξιὸν δὲ μαζὸν οὐκ
ἔχουσιν. παιδίοισι γὰρ ἐοῦσιν ἔτι νηπίοισιν αἱ μητέρες χαλκίον
τετεχνημένον ἐπ' αὐτῷ τούτῳ διάπυρον ποιέουσαι, πρὸς τὸν
μαζὸν τιθέασιν τὸν δεξιὸν, καὶ ἐπικαίεται, ὥστε τὴν αὔξῃσιν

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ό: a man, husband
ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
ἀποπαρθνεύομαι: to lay aside one's
virginity
ἄρῃται: to gain
αὔξῃσις, -ιος, ἡ: growth, increase
δεξιός, -ή, -όν: right, on the right side
διάπυρος, -ον: red-hot
ἔννομος, -η, -ον: customary
ἐπικαίω: to burn up, cauterize
ἢ περ: than (after comp.)
θύω: to offer, sacrifice
ἱερός, -ά, -όν: sacred, holy
ἵππάζομαι: to drive horses, rise
καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, befall
μαζός, ό: a breast

μέχρις: until
μήτηρ, μητερος, ἡ: a mother
νήπιος, -η, -ον: infant
πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, general
παῖδιον, τό: a young child
παρθένος, ἡ: a maiden, virgin
παύω: to make to cease
πολέμιος, ό: an enemy
πρότερος, -η, -ον: before, former
στρατεία, ἡ: an expedition, campaign
συννοικέω: to dwell together
τεχνάομαι: to make by art, construct
τίθῃμι: to set, put, place
τρεῖς: three
χαλκίον, τό: a bronze or copper
instrument

ἕως ἂν ἔωσιν: subj. of εἰμί, "as long as they are virgins"
μέχρις ἂν ἀποκτείνωσι: subj. in gen. temp. cl., "until they kill"
τῶν πολεμίων: partitive gen., "three of their enemies"
πρότερον ἢ περ θύσωσιν: ao. subj. in indef. temp. cl., "before they sacrifice"
ἡ δ' ἂν ἄρῃται: ao. subj. of ἄρῃμαι in gen rel. cl., "whoever gains for herself"
ἑωυτῇ: dat. of ref., "for herself"
ἵππαζομένη: pr. part. with παύεται, "she ceases riding"
ἕως ἂν μὴ ἀνάγκη καταλάβῃ: ao. subj. in gen. temp. cl., "as long as no necessity
befalls"
τετεχνημένον: perf. part., "having been constructed"
ἐοῦσιν ἔτι: "while they are still infants"
ἐπ' αὐτῷ τούτῳ: "constructed for this very purpose"
διάπυρον: pred. acc. with χαλκίον, "making the instrument red-hot"
ὥστε τὴν αὔξῃσιν φθείρεσθαι: inf. in result cl., "so that the growth (of the breast)
is retarded"

Hippocrates

φθείρεσθαι, ἐς δὲ τὸν δεξιὸν ὤμον καὶ βραχίονα πᾶσαν τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ τὸ πλῆθος ἐκδιδόναι.

Concerning the customs of the other Scythians.

[18.] περὶ δὲ τῶν λοιπῶν Σκυθέων τῆς μορφῆς, ὅτι αὐτοὶ αὐτοῖσιν ἐοίκασιν, καὶ οὐδαμῶς ἄλλοις, ὡντὸς λόγος καὶ περὶ τῶν Αἰγυπτίων, πλὴν ὅτι οἱ μὲν ὑπὸ τοῦ θερμοῦ εἰσι βεβιασμένοι, οἱ δ' ὑπὸ τοῦ ψυχροῦ. ἡ δὲ Σκυθέων ἐρημὴ καλυμένη πεδιάς ἐστι καὶ λειμακώδης καὶ ψιλὴ, καὶ ἔνυδρος μετρίως. ποταμοὶ γάρ εἰσι μεγάλοι, οἱ ἐξοχετεύουσι τὸ ὕδωρ ἐκ τῶν πεδίων. ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ Σκύθαι διαιτεῦνται, Νομάδες δὲ καλεῦνται, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν οἰκήματα, ἀλλ' ἐν ἀμάξῃσιν οἰκεῦσιν.

Αἰγύπτιος, -η, -ον: Egyptian

ἄμαξα, ἡ: a wagon

βιάζω: to constrain, oppress

βραχίων, -ονος, ὁ: an arm

διαιτάω: to treat, (pass.) live one's life

ἐκδίδωμι: to give up, surrender

ἔνυδρος, -ον: holding water, well-watered

ἐξοχετεύω: draw off

ἐοίκα: to be like

ἐρημία, ἡ: a desert, wilderness

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

ἰσχὺς, -ύος, ἡ: strength

καλέω: to call

λειμακώδης, -ες: meadowy, grassy

λόγος, ὁ: a work, account

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μέτριος, -η, -ον: within measure, moderate

μορφή, ἡ: form, shape

Νομάς, -άδος, ὁ: roaming about for pasture, a Nomad

οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy

οἴκημα, -ατος, τό: a dwelling, house

οὐδαμῶς: in no way, not at all

πεδιάς, -άδος: flat, level

πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat

πλῆθος, -εος, τό: the largest part, mass

πλὴν: except

ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream

Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ: a Scythian

φθείρω: to ruin, destroy

ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare

ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

ὤμος, ὁ: a shoulder

(ὥστε) ἐκδιδόναι: res. cl., "so that all strength and bulk is surrendered to"

αὐτοῖσιν: dat. after ἐοίκασιν, "they are similar to themselves"

ὡντὸς (= ὁ αὐτὸς): "the same account"

οἱ μὲν... οἱ δε: "the latter... the former"

εἰσι βεβιασμένοι: perf. part. periphrastic, "they are oppressed"

ἡ ἐρημία καλυμένη: "the so-called desert of the Scythians"

αἱ δὲ ἄμαξαι εἰσιν, αἱ μὲν ἐλάχισται τετράκυκλοι, αἱ δὲ ἐξάκυκλοι· αὗται δὲ πῖλοισι περιπεφραγμέναι· εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ τετεχνασμένοι ὥσπερ οἰκήματα, τὰ μὲν ἀπλᾶ, τὰ δὲ τριπλᾶ· ταῦτα δὲ καὶ στεγνὰ πρὸς ὕδωρ, καὶ πρὸς χιόνα, καὶ πρὸς τὰ πνεύματα. τὰς δὲ ἀμάξας ἔλκουσι ζεύγεα, τὰς μὲν δύο, τὰς δὲ τρία βοῶν, κέρως ἄτερ· οὐ γὰρ ἔχουσι κέρατα ὑπὸ ψύχεος. ἐν ταύτῃσι μὲν οὖν τῇσιν ἀμάξεσιν αἱ γυναῖκες διαιτεῦνται· αὐτοὶ δ' ἐφ' ἵππων ὀχεύνται οἱ ἄνδρες. ἔπονται δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τὰ πρόβατα τὰ ἐόντα καὶ αἱ βόες καὶ οἱ ἵπποι· μένουσι δ' ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ τοσοῦτον χρόνον, ὅσον ἂν ἀπόχρη αὐτοῖσι τοῖς κτήνεσιν

ἄμαξα, ἡ: a wagon
 ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man
 ἀπλός, -η, -ον: simple, single
 ἀποχράω: to suffice, be sufficient, be enough
 ἄτερ: without (+ gen.)
 βοῦς, ὁ: a cow
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
 διαιτάω: to treat, (pass.) live one's life
 δύο: two
 ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least
 ἔλκω: to draw, drag
 ἐξάκυκλος, -ον: six-wheeled
 ἔπομαι: to follow
 ζεύγος, -εος, τό: a yoke of beasts, pair
 ἵππος, ὁ: a horse
 κέρας, κέρως, τό: a horn
 κτήνος, -εος, τό: a beast, (pl.) herd, flock

μένω: to stay, remain
 οἶκημα, -ατος, τό: a dwelling, house
 ὅσος, -η, -ον: how much, how great
 ὀχέω: to uphold, endure, (pass.) to ride
 περιφράσσω: to fence, enclose
 πῖλος, ὁ: felt, felt cloth
 πρόβατον, τό: a sheep
 στεγνός, -ή, -όν: proof, waterproof
 τετράκυκλος, -ον: four-wheeled
 τεχνάζω: to employ art, contrive
 τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: so large, so much
 τρεῖς, τρία: three
 τριπλός, -η, -ον: triple, threefold
 χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow
 χρόνος, ὁ: time
 ψύχος, -εος, τό: cold

αἱ μὲν ἐλάχισται ... αἱ δὲ: (sc. μέγισται) "while the smallest... the largest"
 περιπεφραγμέναι: perf. part. (sc. εἰσι) periphrastic, "these are enclosed"
 τετεχνασμένοι: perf. part., "they are contrived"
 τὰ μὲν ἀπλᾶ, τὰ δὲ τριπλᾶ: The wagons may be divided into several compartments, like rooms in a house.
 πρὸς ὕδωρ...πνεύματα: "proof against water, etc."
 τὰς μὲν...τὰς δὲ: "some (wagons)... while others"
 κέρως ἄτερ: antistrophe, "without horn"
 ὑπὸ ψύχεος: "because of the cold"
 τὰ ἐόντα: pr. part. attrib. with πρόβατα, "the ones that are there"
 ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ: "in the same (place)"
 ὅσον ἂν ἀπόχρη: pr. subj. in temp.cl., "so long as fodder is sufficient"

Hippocrates

ὁ χόρτος· ὁκόταν δὲ μηκέτι, ἐς ἑτέρην χώραν ἔρχονται. αὐτοὶ δ' ἐσθίουσι κρέα ἐφθὰ, καὶ πίνουσι γάλα ἵππων, καὶ ἱππάκην τρώγουσι τοῦτο δ' ἐστὶ τυρὸς ἵππων.

How environmental factors affect the constitution of the Scythians.

[19.] τὰ μὲν ἐς τὴν δίαιταν αὐτῶν οὕτως ἔχει καὶ τοὺς νόμους· περὶ δὲ τῶν ὥρέων καὶ τῆς μορφῆς, ὅτι πολὺ ἀπῆλλακται τῶν λοιπῶν ἀνθρώπων τὸ Σκυθικὸν γένος, καὶ ἔοικεν αὐτὸ ἐωντῷ, ὥσπερ τὸ Αἰγύπτιον, καὶ ἥκιστα πολύγονόν ἐστιν, καὶ ἡ χώρα ἐλάχιστα θηρία τρέφει κατὰ μέγεθος καὶ πλῆθος. κεῖται γὰρ ὑπ' αὐτῇσι τῇσιν ἄρκτοις καὶ τοῖς ὄρεσι τοῖς Ῥιπαίοισιν, ὅθεν ὁ βορέης πνεῖ· ὃ τε ἥλιος

Αἰγύπτιος, -η, -ον: Egyptian

ἀπαλλάσσω: to depart from, differ from
(+ gen.)

ἄρκτος, ἡ: the north

βορέης, -ου, ὁ: the north wind

γάλα, γάλακτος, τό: milk

γένος, -εος, τό: race, stock

δίαιτα, ἡ: a way of living, lifestyle

ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least

έρχομαι: to go, migrate

ἐσθίω: to eat

ἐφθός, -ή, -όν: boiled, dressed

ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least

θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast

ἱππάκη, ἡ: mare's-milk cheese

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare

κεῖμαι: to be laid, lie

κρέας, τό: flesh, meat

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: magnitude, size, stature

μηκέτι: no more, no longer, no further

μορφή, ἡ: form, shape

νόμος, ὁ: a usage, custom, law

ὅθεν: from which, whence

ὁκόταν: whenever

ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill

πίνω: to drink

πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number, crowd, multitude

πνέω: to blow

πολύγονος, -ον: producing much offspring, prolific

Ῥιπαία, τά: the Rhipaeian (mountains)

Σκυθικός, -ή, -όν: Scythian

τρέφω: to grow, bring up, rear

τρώγω: to gnaw, munch, eat

τυρός, ὁ: cheese

χόρτος, ὁ: pasture, fodder

χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἀπῆλλακται: perf. pas., "it differs from" + gen.

αὐτὸ ἐωντῷ: "it (γένος) is like itself"

Ῥιπαίοισιν: the Rhipaeian mountains, a fabled range at the extreme north of the known world

τελευτῶν ἐγγύτατα γίνεται, ὁκόταν ἐπὶ τὰς θερινὰς ἔλθῃ
περιόδους, καὶ τότε ὀλίγον χρόνον θερμαίνει, καὶ οὐ σφόδρα·
τὰ δὲ πνεύματα τὰ ἀπὸ τῶν θερμῶν πνέοντα οὐκ ἀφικνείται,
ἢν μὴ ὀλιγάκις καὶ ἀσθενέα, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρκτων αἰεὶ
πνέουσι πνεύματα ψυχρὰ ἀπὸ τε χιόνος καὶ κρυστάλλου καὶ
υδάτων πολλῶν. οὐδέποτε δὲ τὰ ὄρεα ἐκλείπει· ἀπὸ τούτων δὲ
δυσοίκητὰ ἐστίν. ἡὲρ τε κατέχει πολὺς τῆς ἡμέρης τὰ πεδία,
καὶ ἐν τούτοις διαιτεῦνται· ὥστε τὸν μὲν χειμῶνα αἰεὶ εἶναι,
τὸ δὲ θέρος ὀλίγας ἡμέρας, καὶ ταύτας μὴ λίην. μετέωρα γὰρ

αἰεὶ: always, forever	κρύσταλλος, ὁ: ice
ἄρκτος, ἡ: the north	λίην: very, exceedingly
ἀσθενής, -ές: without strength, weak, feeble	μετέωρος, -ον: raised, high-lying
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive	ὁκόταν: whenever
δαιτάω: to treat, (pass.) to live one's life	ὀλιγάκις: but few times, seldom
δυσοίκητος, -ον: bad to dwell in, uninhabitable	ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
ἐγγύς: near, nigh, at hand	ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
ἐκλείπω: to leave out, pass over	οὐδέποτε: not ever, never
ἔρχομαι: to go, come	πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat
ἡήρ, ἡέρος, ὁ: air, fog	περίοδος, ἡ: a going around, orbit, cycle
ἡμέρη, ἡ: a day	πνέω: to blow
θερινός, -ή, -όν: of summer, in summer	σφόδρα: very, much
θερμαίνω: to warm, heat	τελευτάω: to finish, complete
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm	τότε: at that time, then
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer	χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
κατέχω: to hold fast, occupy	χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow
	χρόνος, ὁ: time
	ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

τελευτῶν: pr. part., “as it is setting”
ὁκόταν ἔλθῃ: ao. subj. in temp. cl., “whenever it comes”
ἐπὶ τὰς θερινὰς περιόδους: “during the summer solstice”
ὀλίγον χρόνον: acc. of duration of time, “for a short while”
ἀπὸ τῶν θερμῶν: “winds blowing from warm (regions)”
ἢν (=εάν) μὴ: “unless”
ἐκλείπει: “(the ice) leaves”
τῆς ἡμέρης: gen. time within which, “during the day”
καὶ ἐν τούτοις: “even on these”
διαιτεῦνται: (= διαιτῶνται) “they pass their lives”
ὥστε εἶναι: pr. inf. of εἶμι in result cl., “so that the winter is perpetual”
ὀλίγας ἡμέρας: acc. of duration of time, “the summer (lasts) for a few days”

Hippocrates

τὰ πεδία καὶ ψιλὰ, καὶ οὐκ ἔστεφάνωνται ὄρεσιν, ἀλλ' ἢ ἀνάντεα ἀπὸ τῶν ἄρκτων. αὐτόθι καὶ τὰ θηρία οὐ γίνεται μεγάλα, ἀλλ' οἷά τέ ἐστιν ὑπὸ γῆν σκεπάζεσθαι. ὁ γὰρ χειμῶν κωλύει καὶ τῆς γῆς ἢ ψιλότης, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἀλέη οὐδὲ σκέπη. αἱ δὲ μεταβολαὶ τῶν ὥρέων οὐκ εἰσὶ μεγάλαι οὐδὲ ἰσχυραὶ, ἀλλ' ὅμοιαι καὶ ὀλίγον μεταλλάσουσai: διότι καὶ τὰ εἶδεα ὅμοιοι αὐτοῖς ἐωντοῖς εἰσι σίτῳ τε χρεώμενοι αἰεὶ ὁμοίῳ, ἐσθῆτί τε τῇ αὐτῇ καὶ θέρεος καὶ χειμῶνος, τόν τε ἡέρα ὕδατεινὸν ἔλκοντες καὶ παχὺν, τά τε ὕδατα πίνοντες ἀπὸ

αἰεὶ: always, for ever	οἷός τέ ἐμι: to be able (+ ind.)
ἀλέη, ἡ: warmth	ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
ἀνάντης, -ες: steep, sloped	ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, similar
ἄρκτος, ἡ: the north	ὄρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
αὐτόθι: on the spot, there	παχύς, -εῖα, -ύ: thick, coarse
γῆ, ἡ: earth	πεδίον, τό: a plain, flat
διότι: since	πίνω: to drink
εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form, shape, appearance	σίτος, ὁ: corn, grain, food
ἔλκω: to draw, drag	σκεπάζω: to cover, shelter
ἐσθῆς, -ῆτος, ἡ: dress, clothing	σκέπη, ἡ: a covering, shelter, protection
ἡῆρ, ἡῆρος, ὁ: air	στεφανώω: to surround
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer	ὕδατεινός, -ή, -όν: watery, moist
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast	χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty	χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)
κωλύω: to hinder, check, prevent	ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare, empty
μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing	ψιλότης, -ητος, ἡ: nakedness, bareness
μεταλλάσσω: to change	ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

ἔστεφάνωνται: perf. pas., “the plains have not *been* surrounded by mountains”
 ἀλλ' ἢ: “but rather”
 σκεπάζεσθαι: pas. inf., complementing οἷά τέ ἐστιν, “they are such as are able to be sheltered”
 ὅμοιαι: “but they are *similar* (to one another)”
 ὀλίγον: “they change *little*”
 τὰ εἶδεα: acc. resp., “in physique”
 ἐσθῆτί τε τῇ αὐτῇ: dat. after χρεώμενοι, “using *the same* clothing”
 καὶ θέρεος καὶ χειμῶνος: gen. of time within which, “both in summer and in winter”
 ἔλκοντες: pr. part., “drawing (air)” i.e. breathing

χιόνος καὶ παγετῶν, τοῦ τε ταλαιπώρου ἀπεόντος: οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε τὸ σῶμα ταλαιπωρεῖσθαι, οὐδὲ τὴν ψυχὴν, ὅκου μεταβολαὶ μὴ γίνονται ἰσχυραί. διὰ ταύτας τὰς ἀνάγκας τὰ εἶδεα αὐτῶν παχέα ἐστὶ καὶ σαρκώδεα, καὶ ἄναρθρα καὶ ὑγρὰ καὶ ἄτονα, αἱ τε κοιλίαι ὑγρόταται, πασέων κοιλιῶν αἱ κάτω. οὐ γὰρ οἶόν τε νηδὺν ἀναξηραίνεσθαι ἐν τοιαύτῃ χώρῃ καὶ φύσει καὶ ὥρης καταστάσει, ἀλλὰ διὰ πιμελὴν τε καὶ ψιλὴν τὴν σάρκα, τὰ τε εἶδεα ἔοικεν ἀλλήλοισι, τὰ τε ἄρσενά τοις ἄρσενσι, καὶ τὰ θήλεα τοῖς θήλεσιν. τῶν γὰρ ὥρέων παραπλησίων ἐουσέων, φθοραὶ οὐκ ἐγγίνονται οὐδὲ κακώσεις

ἀλλήλων: one another, each other	μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity	νηδύς, -ύος, ἡ: a stomach
ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up	οἶος τε εἰμι: I am able (+ inf.)
ἄναρθρος, -ον: without (apparent) joints, not articulated	παγετός, ὁ: frost
ἄπειμι: to be away, be absent	παραπλησίος, -η, -ον: nearly resembling
ἄρσεν, -εν: male	παχύς, -εῖα, ὅ: thick, stout
ἄτονος, -ον: slack, relaxed, flabby	πιμελή, ἡ: soft fat
ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place, happen	σαρκώδης, -ες: fleshy
εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form, shape, appearance	σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh
ἔοικε: be like (+ dat.)	ταλαιπωρέω: to go through hard labor, to suffer hardship
θήλυς, θήλεια, θήλυ: female	ταλαιπωρον, τό: hardihood, the hard life
ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty	ὑγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, fluid
κάκωσις, -ιος, ἡ: ill-treatment, distress	φθορή, ἡ: destruction, ruin, corruption
κατάστασις, -ιος, ἡ: a settling, state, condition	χιών, -όνος, ἡ: snow
κάτω: down, downwards	χώρῃ, ἡ: a space, place, region
κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels	ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare, naked
	ψυχή, ἡ: spirit, mind
	ὥρῃ, ἡ: a period, season

τοῦ τε ταλαιπώρου ἀπεόντος: gen. abs., “with the hard life being absent”

τὸ σῶμα ταλαιπωρεῖσθαι: acc. + inf. after οἶόν τε (sc. ἐστι), “for it is not possible for the body to suffer hardship”

αἱ κάτω: “those below (i.e. the lower bowels, or intestines) are most moist of all”

νηδὺν ἀναξηραίνεσθαι: acc. + inf. after οἶόν τε (sc. ἐστι), “for it is not possible for the stomach to be dried up”

ὥρέων ἐουσέων: gen. abs., “the seasons being similar”

ἐν τῇ τοῦ γόνου συμπίξει, ἣν μή τινος ἀνάγκης βιαίου τύχη ἢ νούσου.

On the moistness of the Scythians and its consequences for their health.

[20.] μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον ἐς τὴν ὑγρότητα παρέξομαι. Σκυθέων γὰρ τοὺς πολλούς, ἅπαντας ὅσοι Νομάδες, εὐρήσεις κεκαυμένους τοὺς τε ὤμους καὶ τοὺς βραχίονας καὶ τοὺς καρπούς τῶν χειρῶν καὶ τὰ στήθεα, καὶ τὰ ἰσχία καὶ τὴν ὀσφύν, δι' ἄλλ' οὐδὲν ἢ διὰ τὴν ὑγρότητα τῆς φύσιος καὶ τὴν μαλακίην. οὐ γὰρ δύνανται οὔτε τοῖς τόξοις συντείνειν, οὔτε τῷ ἀκοντίῳ ἐμπίπτειν τῷ ὤμῳ ὑπὸ ὑγρότητος καὶ ἀτονίης· ὁκόταν δὲ καυθέωσιν, ἀναξηραίνεται ἐκ τῶν ἄρθρων τὸ πολὺ

ἀκόντιον, τό: a javelin
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole
ἄρθρον, τό: a joint
ἀτονία, ἡ: slackness, flabbiness
βιαίος, -ον: forcible, violent
βραχίων, ονος, ὁ: an arm
γόνος, ὁ: seed
δύναμαι: to be able, be possible
ἐμπίπτω: to throw
εὐρίσκω: to find
ἰσχίον, -ον, τό: a hip
καίω: to burn, cauterize
καρπός, ὁ: a wrist

μαλακίη, ἡ: softness, delicacy
Νομάς, -άδος, ὁ: a Nomad
νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
ὁκόταν: whenever
ὀσφύς, -ύος, ἡ: loins
παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
στήθος, -εος, τό: a breast
σύμπηξις, -ιος, ἡ: coagulation
συντείνω: to draw tight
τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
τόξον, τό: a bow
τυγχάνω: to chance upon (+ gen.)
ὑγρότης, -ατος, ἡ: wetness, moisture
χείρ, χειρός, ἡ: a hand
ὤμος, ὁ: a shoulder

ἣν μή τύχη: ao. subj. of τυγχάνω in pr. gen. cond., “unless there occurs some necessity or disease”

τύχη: dat. of means, “by the chance of” + gen.

ὑγρότητα: “the moistness (of the Scythians)”

παρέξομαι: fut. of παρέχω, “I will provide proof”

ἅπαντας ὅσοι Νομάδες: “all of the ones who (are) Nomads”

κεκαυμένους: perf. part. in ind. st. after εὐρήσεις, “you will find that their shoulders have been cauterized”

δι(α) ἄλλ(ο) οὐδὲν ἢ: “because of nothing other than”

τῷ ὤμῳ: dat. of means, “with their shoulder”

ὁκόταν καυθέωσιν: ao. pas. subj. in indef. temp. cl., “whenever these are cauterized...”

τοῦ ὑγροῦ, καὶ ἐντονώτερα μᾶλλον γίνεται, καὶ τροφιμώτερα καὶ ἡρθρωμένα τὰ σώματα μᾶλλον. ῥοϊκὰ δὲ γίνεται καὶ πλατέα, πρῶτον μὲν ὅτι οὐ σπαργανοῦνται ὥσπερ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ, οὐδὲ νομίζουσι διὰ τὴν ἵππασίνην, ὅκως ἂν εὐεδροὶ ἔωσιν· ἔπειτα δὲ διὰ τὴν ἔδρην· τὰ τε γὰρ ἄρσενα, ἕως ἂν οὐχ οἶά τε ἐφ' ἵππου ὀχεῖσθαι, τὸ πολὺ τοῦ χρόνου κάθηται ἐν τῇ ἀμάξῃ, καὶ βραχὺ τῇ βαδίσει χρέονται, διὰ τὰς μεταναστάσις καὶ περιελάσις· τὰ δὲ θήλεα θαυμαστὸν οἶον ῥοϊκὰ ἐστὶ τε καὶ βραδέα τὰ εἶδεα. πυρρὸν δὲ τὸ γένος ἐστὶ τὸ Σκυθικὸν διὰ

Αἴγυπτος, ἡ: Egypt

ἄμαξα, ἡ: a wagon

ἄρθρῶω: to fasten by a joint, (pas.) be articulated

ἄρσεν, -εν: male

βάδισις, -ιος, ἡ: a walking, going on foot

βραδύς, -εἶα, -ύ: slow, sluggish

βραχύς, -εἶα, -ύ: short

γένος, -εος, τό: a race, stock

ἔδρη, ἡ: a sitting, inactivity

εἶδος, -εος, τό: a form, shape, appearance

ἐντονός, -ον: well-strung, sinewy

ἔπειτα: thereupon, then

εὐέδρος, -ον: a good sitting (on a horse)

θαυμαστός, -ή, -όν: wondrous, wonderful, marvelous

θήλυς, θήλεια, θήλυ: female

ἵππασία, ἡ: riding, horse-exercise

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare

κάθημαι: to be seated

μετανάστασις, -ιος, ἡ: a migration

νομίζω: to hold, think, practice

οἶός τε εἶμι: I am able to (+ inf.)

ὀχέομαι: to ride

περιέλασις, -ιος, ἡ: a driving around

πλατύς, -εἶα, -ύ: wide, broad, squat

πυρρός, -ή, -όν: yellowish-red, tawny

ῥοϊκός, -ή, -όν: crooked, curved

Σκυθικός, -ή, -όν: Scythian

σπαργανῶω: to wrap in swaddling-clothes, swathe

τρόφimos, -η, -ον: well-nourished, healthy

ύγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, fluid

χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ dat.)

χρόνος, ὁ: time

τὸ πολὺ τοῦ ὑγροῦ: "the excess of the moisture"

γίνεται: "their bodies become"

ἡρθρωμένα: perf. part. of ἄρθρῶω, "articulated"

ὥσπερ ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ: "as they do in Egypt" but the text may be corrupt here since it is unlikely that Egyptians used swaddling clothes

οὐδὲ νομίζουσι: "nor are they (the Scythians) accustomed (to do this)"

ὅκως ἂν εὐέδροι ἔωσιν: pr. subj. of εἶμι in purp. cl., "in order to be good riders"

ἔπειτα: "secondly, on account of..."

ἕως ἂν οὐχ οἶά τε (sc. ἡ): pr. subj. in temp. cl., "as long as they are not able to" + inf.

βραχὺ: adv., "seldom"

θαυμαστὸν οἶον ἐστὶ: "it is wonderful that" + acc. + inf.

Hippocrates

τὸ ψύχος, οὐκ ἐπιγινομένου ὀξέος τοῦ ἡλίου: ὑπὸ δὲ τοῦ
ψύχεος ἡ λευκότης ἐπικαίεται καὶ γίνεται πυρρή.

The Scythian constitution promotes infertility.

[21] πολύγονον δὲ οὐχ οἶόν τε εἶναι φύσιν τοιαύτην:
οὔτε γὰρ τῷ ἀνδρὶ ἡ ἐπιθυμία τῆς μείξιος γίνεται πολλή διὰ
τὴν ὑγρότητα τῆς φύσιος καὶ τῆς κοιλίης τὴν μαλθακότητά τε
καὶ τὴν ψυχρότητα, ἀφ' ὅτων ἥκιστα εἰκὸς ἀνδρα οἶόν τε
λαγνεύειν: καὶ ἔτι ὑπὸ τῶν ἵππων αἰεὶ κοπτόμενοι, ἀσθενέες
γίνονται ἐς τὴν μείξιν. τοῖσι μὲν ἀνδράσιν αὐται αἱ προφάσεις
γίνονται: τῇσι δὲ γυναιξὶν ἣ τε πιότης τῆς σαρκὸς καὶ
ὑγρότης: οὐ γὰρ δύνανται ἔτι συναρπάζειν αἱ μήτραι τὸν

αἰεὶ: always, forever

ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ: a man

ἀσθενής, -ές: without strength, weak

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman

δύναμαι: to be able to (+ inf.)

εἰκός: likely

ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about,
befall

ἐπιθυμία, ἡ: desire for (+ gen.)

ἐπικαίω: to light up, burn

ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse, mare

κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels

κόπτω: to strike, smite

λαγνεύω: have sexual intercourse

λευκότης, -ητος, ἡ: whiteness

μαλθακότης, -ητος, ἡ: softness

μείξις, -ιος, ἡ: mixing, sex

μήτηρ, ἡ: womb

μίξις, -ιος, ἡ: mixing, sex

οἶός τε εἰμι: I am able to (+ inf.)

ὀξύς, -εῖα, -ύ: sharp, keen

πιότης, -ητος, ἡ: fattiness

πολύγονος, -ον: producing much
offspring, prolific

πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: alleged cause

πυρρός, -ή, -όν: yellowish-red, tawny

σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh

συναρπάζω: to seize

ὑγρότης, -ατος, ἡ: wetness, moisture

ψύχος, -εος, τό: cold

ψυχρότης, -ητος, ἡ: coldness, cold

οὐκ ἐπιγινομένου τοῦ ἡλίου: gen. abs., “not (because of) the sun befalling”

ἡ λευκότης: “the whiteness (of their skin) is burned”

οἶόν τε (sc. ἐστι): “nor is it possible” + acc. + inf.

ἀφ' ὅτων: “from which things”

εἰκὸς (sc. ἐστι): it is least likely that” + acc. + inf.

οἶόν τε (sc. εἶναι): “that a man is able to” + inf.

τοῖσι μὲν...τῇσι δὲ: “while for the men... for the women”

γόνον· οὔτε γὰρ ἐπιμήνιος κάθαρσις αὐτῇσι γίνεται ὡς χρεῶν ἔστιν, ἀλλ' ὀλίγον καὶ διὰ χρόνον· τό τε στόμα τῶν μητρέων ὑπὸ πιμελῆς συγκλείεται, καὶ οὐχ ὑποδέχεται τὸν γόνον· αὐταὶ τε ἀταλαίπωροι καὶ πῖραι, καὶ αἱ κοιλίαι ψυχραὶ καὶ μαλακαί. ὑπὸ τούτων τῶν ἀναγκῶν οὐ πολὺγονόν ἐστι τὸ γένος τὸ Σκυθικόν. μέγα δὲ τεκμήριον αἱ οἰκέτιδες ποιοῦσιν· οὐ γὰρ φθάνουσι παρὰ ἄνδρα ἀφικνεύμεναι, καὶ ἐν γαστρὶ ἴσχουσιν διὰ τὴν τάλαιπωρίην καὶ ἰσχνότητα τῆς σαρκός.

The infertility of the Scythians and its causes.

[22] ἔτι τε πρὸς τούτοις εὐνουχίαι γίνονται οἱ πλείστοι ἐν Σκύθῃσι, καὶ γυναικεῖα ἐργάζονται, καὶ ὡς αἱ γυναῖκες διαιτεῦνται διαλέγονταί τε ὁμοίως· καλεῦνταί τε οἱ

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
 ἀταλαίπωρος, -ον: indifferent, careless
 ἀφικνεόμαι: to come to
 γαστήρ, -έρος, ἡ: the paunch, belly
 γένος, -εος, τό: race, stock, family
 γόνος, ό: seed
 γυναικεῖος, -η, -ον: of or belonging to women
 γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman
 διαιτάω: to treat, (pass.) to live one's life
 διαλέγω: to converse
 ἐπιμήνιος, -ον: monthly
 ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor
 εὐνουχίας, -ον, ό: impotent
 ἰσχνότης, -ητος, ἡ: thinness, leanness
 ἴσχω: to hold
 κάθαρσις, -ιος, ἡ: a cleansing
 καλέω: to call
 κοιλίη, ἡ: belly, (pl.) bowels
 μαλακός, -ή, -όν: soft

οἰκετις, -ιδος, ἡ: slave-girl
 ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
 ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
 πῖρος, -η, -ον: fat
 πιμελής, -ές: fat
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 ποιέω: to do, make
 πολὺγονος, -ον: prolific
 σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh
 Σκυθικός, -ή, -όν: Scythian
 στόμα, τό: a mouth
 συγκλείω: to enclose
 τάλαιπωρία, ἡ: hard work, hardship
 τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
 ὑποδέχομαι: to receive
 φθάνω: to do first or before (+ part.)
 χρεών, τό: that which ought be, expedient
 χρόνος, ό: time
 ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

ὡς χρεῶν ἔστιν: "as it should"

διὰ χρόνον: "far apart in time"

αὐταί: "the women themselves"

οὐ φθάνουσι ἀφικνεύμεναι: "they no sooner arrive and they have"

αἱ γυναῖκες: "they live like women," the definite article is generic

Hippocrates

τοιούτοι Ἀναριεῖς. οἱ μὲν ἐπιχώριοι τὴν αἰτίην προστιθέασι
θεῶ, καὶ σέβονται τούτους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους καὶ προσκυνέουσιν,
δεδοικότες περὶ ἐωυτῶν ἕκαστοι. ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ αὐτῷ δοκεῖ
ταῦτα τὰ πάθεα θεῖα εἶναι καὶ τᾶλλα πάντα, καὶ οὐδὲν ἕτερον
ἐτέρου θειότερον οὐδὲ ἀνθρωπινώτερον, ἀλλὰ πάντα ὅμοια καὶ
πάντα θεῖα: ἕκαστον δὲ αὐτῶν ἔχει φύσιν τὴν ἐωυτοῦ καὶ
οὐδὲν ἄνευ φύσιος γίνεται. καὶ τοῦτο τὸ πάθος, ὥς μοι δοκεῖ
γίνεσθαι, φράσω: ὑπὸ τῆς ἵππασίης αὐτοὺς κέδματα λαμβάνει,
ᾗτε αἰεὶ κρεμαμένων ἀπὸ τῶν ἵππων τῶν ποσῶν: ἔπειτα
ἀποχωλοῦνται καὶ ἐλκοῦνται τὰ ἰσχία οἱ ἂν σφόδρα
νοσήσωσιν. ἰῶνται δὲ σφᾶς αὐτοὺς τρόπῳ τοιῷδε: ὁκόταν γὰρ

αἰτία, ἡ: a charge, cause

Ἀναριεῖς: androgynous

ἄνευ: without (+ gen.)

ἀνθρώπινος, -η, -ον: human

ἀποχωλόομαι: to be quite lame

ᾗτε: just as, so as (+ part.)

δεῖδω: to fear

ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each

ἐλκόμαι: to suffer from sores

ἔπειτα: thereupon

ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, native

θεῖος, -η, -ον: divine

ἰάομαι: to heal, cure

ἵππασίη, ἡ: riding, horse-exercise

ἵππος, ὁ: a horse

ἴσχιον, τό: hip-joint

κέδματα, -ων, τά: a kind of sore

κρεμάννυμι: to hang

λαμβάνω: to take

νοσέω: to be sick

ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling

πάθος: experience, suffering

πούς, ὁ: a foot

προσκυνέω: to make obeisance to

προστίθημι: to put X (acc.) on Y (dat.)

σέβομαι: to feel awe or fear

σφόδρα: very

τρόπος, ὁ: a turn, direction, course, way

φράζω: to point out, show, indicate

Ἀναριεῖς: In Herod. 1.105 and 4.67 it is spelled Ἐναρῆες, perhaps a Scythian word

δεδοικότες: perf. part. of δεῖδω, “being afraid”

ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ αὐτῷ: “even to me these seem”

τᾶλλα πάντα: “all the others”

ἐτέρου: gen. of comp. after θειότερον, “more divine than another”

τὴν ἐωυτοῦ: attributive phrase, “its own nature”

κρεμαμένων: pr. pas. part. in gen. abs. with causal particle ᾗτε, “because their feet
are always being dangled from their horses.” Jones reads τοῖς ποσίν.

οἱ ἂν νοσήσωσιν: ao. subj. in gen. rel. cl., “whoever is ill”

ἄρχηται ἡ νοῦσος, ὅπισθεν τοῦ ὠτὸς ἐκατέρου φλέβα
τάμνουσιν. ὁκόταν δὲ ἀπορρυῇ τὸ αἷμα, ὕπνος ὑπολαμβάνει
ὑπὸ ἀσθενείης, καὶ καθεύδουσιν. ἔπειτα ἀνεγείρονται, οἱ μὲν
τινες ὑγιέες ἐόντες, οἱ δ' οὐ. ἐμοὶ μὲν οὖν δοκεῖ ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ
ιῆσει διαφθείρεσθαι ὁ γόνος: εἰσὶ γὰρ παρὰ τὰ ὦτα φλέβες, ἃς
ἐάν τις ἐπιτάμῃ, ἄγονοι γίνονται οἱ ἐπιτμηθέντες. ταύτας
τοῖνυν μοι δοκεῖσι τὰς φλέβας ἐπιτάμνειν. οἱ δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα,
ἐπειδὴν ἀφίκωνται παρὰ γυναῖκας, καὶ μὴ οἰοί τε ἔωσι
χρῆσθαι σφίσιν, τὸ πρῶτον οὐκ ἐνθυμῶνται, ἀλλ' ἡσυχίην
ἔχουσι. ὁκόταν δὲ δις καὶ τρίς καὶ πλεονάκις αὐτοῖσι

ἄγονος, -ον: impotent	ἡσυχίη, ἡ: stillness, rest, quiet
αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood	ἱησις, -ιος, ἡ: a healing
ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse	καθεύδω: to lie down to sleep, sleep
ἀπορρέω: to flow or run off, stream forth	νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
ἄρχω: to begin	οἶός τε εἴμι: I am able to (+ inf.)
ἀσθενείη, ἡ: want of strength, weakness	ὀπισθεν: behind (+ gen.)
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to	οὖς, ὠτὸς, τό: an ear
γόνος, ὁ: seed	πλεονάκις: more frequently, oftener
γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ: a woman	τάμνω: to cut, hew
διαφθείρω: to destroy utterly	τοῖνυν: therefore, accordingly
δῖς: twice, doubly	τρίς: thrice, three times
ἐκάτερος: each of two	ὑγιής, -ές: sound, healthy
ἐνθυμέομαι: to notice, be concerned	ὕπνος, ὁ: sleep, slumber
ἐπειδάν: whenever (+ subj.)	ὑπολαμβάνω: to overtake
ἔπειτα: thereupon	φλέψ, φλεβός, ἡ: a vein
ἐπιτάμνω: to cut on the surface	χρέομαι: to use, have sex with (+ dat.)

ὁκόταν ἄρχηται: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever it begins”

ὅταν δὲ ἀπορρυῇ: ao. subj. of ἀπορρέω in gen. temp. cl., “once it has begun to flow”

οἱ μὲν, οἱ δ' οὐ: “some being... others not”

διαφθείρεσθαι: pr. pas. inf., “the seed seems to be destroyed”

ἐάν τις ἐπιτάμῃ: ao. subj. in pr. gen. cond., “if someone cuts”

οἱ ἐπιτμηθέντες: ao. pas. part., “those who have been cut”

δοκεῖσι: “they (who perform the operation) seem to me to” + inf.

ἐπειδὴν ἀφίκωνται: ao. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “whenever they arrive”

μὴ οἰοί τε ἔωσι: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “(and when) they are not able to” + inf.

Hippocrates

πειρωμένοισι μηδὲν ἄλλοιότερον ἀποβαίνῃ, νομίσαντές τι ἡμαρτηκέναι τῷ θεῷ ὃν ἐπαιτιῶνται, ἐνδύονται στολὴν γυναικείην, καταγνόντες ἑωυτῶν ἀνανδρείην. γυναικίζουσί τε καὶ ἐργάζονται μετὰ τῶν γυναικῶν ἃ καὶ ἐκεῖναι.

The cause of the Scythian afflictions is indicated by its provenance among the wealthy.

τοῦτο δὲ πάσχουσι Σκυθέων οἱ πλούσιοι, οὐχ οἱ κάκιστοι, ἀλλ' οἱ εὐγενέστατοι καὶ ἰσχὺν πλείστην κεκτημένοι, διὰ τὴν ἵππασίνην, οἱ δὲ πένητες ἦσσαν· οὐ γὰρ ἱππάζονται. καίτοι ἐχρῆν, ἐπεὶ θειότερον τοῦτο τὸ νόσευμα τῶν λοιπῶν ἐστίν, οὐ τοῖσι γενναιοτάτοις τῶν Σκυθέων καὶ τοῖς πλουσιωτάτοις προσπίπτειν μούνοις, ἀλλὰ τοῖσιν ἅπασιν

ἄλλοις, -η, -ον: different	ἰσχὺς, -ύος, ἡ: strength
ἁμαρτάνω: to miss, wrong	κακός, -ή, -όν: bad, inferior
ἀνανδρεία, ἡ: want of manhood	καταγιγνώσκω: to remark, discover
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole	κτάομαι: to get, gain, acquire
ἀποβαίνω: to occur	λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
γενναῖος, -η, -ον: nobly born	μόνως, -η, -ον: alone
γυναικεῖος, -η, -ον: of women, female	νομίζω: to hold, think, believe
γυναικίζω: to be womanish, play the woman	νόσευμα, -ατος, τό: sickness
ἐνδύω: to put on	πάσχω: to suffer
ἐπαιτιάομαι: to bring a charge against, accuse	πειράω: to attempt, endeavor, try
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor	πένης, -ητος, ό: a poor man
εὐγενής, -ές: well-born, noble	πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
ἥσσαν, -ον: less	πλούσιος, -η, -ον: rich, wealthy, opulent
ἱππάζομαι: to ride horses	προσπίπτω: to fall upon
ἱππασίη, ἡ: riding, horse-exercise	Σκύθης, -ου, ό: a Scythian
	στολή, ἡ: a garment
	χρή: it is fated, necessary

πειρωμένοισι: pr. part. dat. pl., “to them trying”

όκόταν ... ἀποβαίνῃ: pr. subj. in gen. temp. cl., “when it happens”

μηδὲν ἄλλοιότερον: adv., “not otherwise at all”

ἡμαρτηκέναι: perf. inf. in ind. st. after νομίσαντές, “thinking that they have wronged” + dat.

καταγνόντες: ao. part., “having realized”

κεκτημένοι: perf. part., “those who have gained the most strength”

ἦσσαν: “are afflicted less”

ἐχρῆν: the imperf. has a contrafactual force even with out ἄν, “it would be necessary” + inf.

ἅπασιν: dat. after προσπίπτειν, “but to fall on all equally”

ὁμοίως, καὶ μᾶλλον τοῖσιν ὀλίγα κεκτημένοισιν, εἰ δὴ τιμώμενοι χαίρουσιν οἱ θεοὶ καὶ θαυμαζόμενοι ὑπ' ἀνθρώπων, καὶ ἀντὶ τούτων χάριτας ἀποδιδόασιν. εἰκὸς γὰρ τοὺς μὲν πλουσίους θύειν πολλὰ τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἀνατιθέναι ἀναθήματα, ἐόντων χρημάτων πολλῶν, καὶ τιμῶν, τοὺς δὲ πένητας ἡσσαν, διὰ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν, ἔπειτα καὶ ἐπιμεμφομένους ὅτι οὐ διδόασιν χρήματα αὐτοῖσιν, ὥστε τῶν τοιούτων ἀμαρτιῶν τὰς ζημίας τοὺς ὀλίγα κεκτημένους φέρειν μᾶλλον ἢ τοὺς πλουσίους. ἀλλὰ γὰρ, ὥσπερ καὶ πρότερον ἔλεξα, θεῖα μὲν καὶ ταῦτά

ἀμαρτία, ἡ: a failure, fault, sin
ἀνάθημα, -ατος, τό: a votive offering
ἀνατίθημι: to set up, dedicate
ἀντί: opposite, in return (+ *gen.*)
ἀποδίδωμι: to give up or back, restore, return
δίδωμι: to give
εἰκός: likely
ἐπιμέμφομαι: to cast blame upon
ζημία, ἡ: loss, damage
ἡσσαν, -ον: less
θαυμάζω: to wonder, marvel, be astounded
θεῖος, -η, -ον: divine

θεός, ὁ: a god
θύω: to sacrifice
κτάομαι: to get, gain, acquire
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, small
ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: alike
πένης, -ητος, ὁ: a poor man
πλούσιος, -η, -ον: rich, wealthy, opulent
τιμάω: to honor
φέρω: to bear
χαίρω: to rejoice, be glad, be delighted
χάρις, -ιτος, ἡ: grace
χρῆμα, -ατος: a thing that one uses, wealth

τοῖσιν κεκτημένοισιν: perf. part. dat. also after *προσπίπτειν*, “on those possessing little”

τιμώμενοι, θαυμαζόμενοι: pr. part. pas. supplementing *χαίρουσιν*, “if indeed the gods enjoy being honored and being marveled at by men”

θύειν ... ἀνατιθέναι ... τιμῶν: inf. with *εἰκός*, “it is likely that they sacrifice ... dedicate ... honor”

ἐόντων χρημάτων: gen. abs. causal, “since there are many riches (to them)”

διὰ τὸ μὴ ἔχειν: art. inf., “on account of not having”

ἐπιμεμφομένους: pr. part. causal giving an additional reason for not sacrificing, “then also because they (the poor) blame”

ὅτι οὐ διδόασιν: “because they (the gods) do not give”

ὥστε ... φέρειν: res. cl., “so that those possessing little bear”

τῶν τοιούτων ἀμαρτιῶν: “the penalties of such sins” i.e. the alleged causes of the illness

ἔλεξα: wk. ao. of λέγω, instead of εἶπον, “as I said”

ἐστὶν ὁμοίως τοῖς ἄλλοις· γίνεται δὲ κατὰ φύσιν ἕκαστα· καὶ ἡ τοιαύτη νοῦσος ἀπὸ τοιαύτης προφάσιος τοῖς Σκύθησι γίνεται οἷον εἶρηκα. ἔχει δὲ καὶ κατὰ τοὺς λοιποὺς ἀνθρώπους ὁμοίως. ὅκου γὰρ ἱππάζονται μάλιστα καὶ πυκνότατα, ἐκεῖ πλείστοι ὑπὸ κεδμάτων καὶ ἰσchiάδων καὶ ποδαγριῶν ἀλίσκονται, καὶ λαγνεύειν κάκιστοί εἰσιν. ταῦτα δὲ τοῖσί τε Σκύθησι πρόσσεστι, καὶ εὐνουχοειδέστατοί εἰσιν ἀνθρώπων διὰ ταύτας τε τὰς προειρημένας προφάσις, καὶ ὅτι ἀναξυρίδας ἔχουσιν αἰεὶ καὶ εἰσὶν ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων τὸ πλείστον τοῦ χρόνου, ὥστε μήτε χειρὶ ἄπτεσθαι τοῦ αἰδοίου, ὑπὸ τε τοῦ ψύχεος καὶ τοῦ κόπου ἐπιλαθέσθαι τοῦ ἡμέρου καὶ τῆς μείξις, καὶ μηδὲν παρακινεῖν πρότερον ἢ ἀνανδρωθῆναι.

αἰδοῖον, τό: the genitals
 ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, conquered
 ἀνανδρόομαι: to become impotent
 ἀναξυρίδες, -ίδων, αἱ: trousers
 ἄπτομαι: to grasp (+ gen.)
 ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each
 ἐπιλανθάνομαι: to forget (+ gen.)
 εὐνουχοειδής, -ές: like a eunuch
 ἡμερος, ό: a desire
 ἱππάζομαι: to ride horses
 ἰσchiάς, -άδος, ἡ: hip-disease
 κακός, -ή, -όν: bad
 κέδματα, -των, τά: a kind of sore
 κόπος, ό: a striking, beating
 λαγνεύω: to have sexual intercourse

λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
 μείξις, -ιος, ἡ: sex
 νοῦσος, ἡ: a sickness, disease
 οἶος, οἷη, οἶον: such as
 ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
 παρακινέω: to move aside, disturb
 πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest
 ποδαγρίη, ἡ: gout
 πρόσσεμι: to belong to (+ dat.)
 πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: an alleged cause
 πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, frequent
 Σκύθης, -ου, ό: a Scythian
 χεῖρ, ἡ: a hand
 χρόνος, ό: time
 ψύχος, -εος, τό: cold

εἶρηκα: perf. of λέγω, "I have said"

ἔχει...ὁμοίως: "it is similar"

λαγνεύειν: inf. epex. after κάκιστοί, "very bad at having intercourse"

προειρημένας: perf. part. of προ-λέγω, "the aforementioned"

ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων: pred., "because they are on horses"

ὥστε ... ἄπτεσθαι ... ἐπιλαθέσθαι ... παρακινεῖν: inf. in res. cl., "so that they do not touch ... so that they forget ... so that they disturb nothing"

ἀνανδρωθῆναι: ao. pas inf. after ἡ, "before they are made impotent"

On Airs, Waters, and Places

The other European peoples are more heterogeneous and thus more courageous.

[23] *περὶ μὲν οὖν τῶν Σκυθέων οὕτως ἔχει τοῦ γένεος. τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν γένος τὸ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ διάφορον αὐτὸ ἐωυτῶ ἐστι, καὶ κατὰ τὸ μέγεθος καὶ κατὰ τὰς μορφὰς, διὰ τὰς μεταλλαγὰς τῶν ὥρέων, ὅτι μεγάλαί γίνονται καὶ πυκναί, καὶ θάλπεά τε ἰσχυρὰ καὶ χειμῶνες καρτεροί, καὶ ὄμβροι πολλοί, καὶ αὔθις αὐχμοὶ πολυχρόνιοι, καὶ πνεύματα, ἐξ ὧν μεταβολαὶ πολλαὶ καὶ παντοδαπαί. ἀπὸ τούτων εἰκὸς αἰσθάνεσθαι καὶ τὴν γένεσιν ἐν τῇ συμπήξει τοῦ γόνου ἄλλοτε ἄλλην καὶ μὴ τῷ αὐτῷ τὴν αὐτὴν γίνεσθαι, ἔν τε τῷ θέρει καὶ τῷ χειμῶνι, μηδὲ ἐν ἐπομβρίῃ καὶ αὐχμῷ. διότι τὰ εἶδεα διηλλάχθαι νομίζω τῶν Εὐρωπαϊῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν Ἀσινηνῶν καὶ τὰ μεγέθη*

<i>αἰσθάνομαι</i> : to perceive	<i>ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν</i> : strong, mighty
<i>αὔθις</i> : back, back again	<i>καρτερός, -ή, -όν</i> : strong, staunch, stout
<i>αὐχμός, ὅ</i> : drought	<i>λοιπός, -ή, -όν</i> : remaining, the rest
<i>γένεσις, -ιος, ἡ</i> : an origin, source	<i>μέγεθος, -εος, τό</i> : greatness, stature
<i>γένος, -εος, τό</i> : race	<i>μεταβολή, ἡ</i> : a change, changing
<i>γόνος, ὅ</i> : a seed	<i>μεταλλαγὴ, ἡ</i> : change
<i>διαλλάσσω</i> : to vary	<i>μορφή, ἡ</i> : form, shape
<i>διάφορος, -ον</i> : different, unlike	<i>νομίζω</i> : to hold, think, believe
<i>διότι</i> : for the reason that, since	<i>ὄμβρος, ὅ</i> : heavy rain
<i>εἶδος, -εος, τό</i> : form, shape, figure	<i>παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν</i> : of every kind
<i>εἰκός</i> : reasonable	<i>πολυχρόνιος, -ον</i> : long-lasting
<i>ἐπομβρίη, ἡ</i> : heavy rain, abundance of wet, wet weather	<i>πυκνός, -ή, -όν</i> : close, frequent
<i>Εὐρωπαϊός, -η, -ον</i> : European	<i>Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ</i> : a Scythian
<i>Εὐρώπη, ἡ</i> : Europe	<i>σύμψηξις, -ιος, ἡ</i> : coagulation
<i>θάλπος, -εος, τό</i> : warmth, heat	<i>χειμών, -ῶνος, ὁ</i> : winter
<i>θέρους, -εος, τό</i> : summer	<i>ῶρη, ἡ</i> : a period, season

τὴν γένεσιν ... ἄλλην καὶ μὴ τὴν αὐτὴν γίνεσθαι: acc. + inf. in ind. st. after *αἰσθάνεσθαι* (which usually takes the participle), “to see that generation is different and not the same”

τῷ αὐτῷ: dat. of ref, “the same for the same seed”

ἐν τῇ συμπήξει τοῦ γόνου: “in the coagulation of the seed” i.e., in the formation of the fetus

διηλλάχθαι: ao. pas. inf in ind. st. after *νομίζω*, “that the physique varies”

μᾶλλον ἢ: “more than among Asians”

Hippocrates

διαφορώτατα αὐτὰ ἐωυτοῖς εἶναι κατὰ πόλιν ἐκάστην. αἱ γὰρ φθοραὶ πλείονες ἐγγίνονται τοῦ γόνου ἐν τῇ συμπήξει ἐν τῇσι μεταλλαγῇσι τῶν ὥρέων πυκνήσιν ἐούσησιν ἢ ἐν τῇσι παραπλησίησι καὶ ὁμοίησι. περί τε τῶν ἡθέων ὁ αὐτὸς λόγος: τό τε ἄγριον καὶ τὸ ἄμεικτον καὶ τὸ θυμοειδὲς ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ φύσει ἐγγίνεται: αἱ γὰρ ἐκπλήξεις πυκναὶ γινόμεναι τῆς γνώμης τὴν ἀγριότητα ἐντιθέασιν: τὸ δὲ ἡμερόν τε καὶ ἡπιον ἀμαυροῦσι: διό καὶ εὐψυχοτέρους νομίζω τοὺς τὴν Εὐρώπην οἰκέοντας εἶναι ἢ τοὺς τὴν Ἀσίην. ἐν μὲν γὰρ τῷ αἰεὶ παραπλησίῳ αἱ ῥαθυμίαι ἔναισιν, ἐν δὲ τῷ μεταβαλλομένῳ αἱ ταλαιπωρίαὶ τῷ σώματι καὶ τῇ ψυχῇ. καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν ἡσυχίης καὶ

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: wild	ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, tamed, reclaimed
ἀγριότης, -ητος, ἡ: wildness, savageness	ἡπιος, -η, -ον: gentle, mild, kind
ἀμαυρόω: to make dim, faint	ἡσυχίη, ἡ: stillness, rest, quiet
ἄμεικτος, -ον: unmingled	θυμοειδής, -ές: high-spirited, courageous
Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia	μεταβάλλω: to vary
γνώμη, ἡ: mind	μεταλλαγῇ, ἡ: change
γόνος, ὁ: seed	νομίζω: to hold, think, believe
διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike	οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy
ἐγγίνομαι: to take place, happen	ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
ἕκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each	παραπλήσιος, -η, -ον: similar
ἐκπληξίς, -ιος, ἡ: consternation	πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, frequent
ἔνιμι: to be in (+ dat.)	ῥαθυμία, ἡ: laziness
ἐντίθημι: to introduce	σύμπηξις, -ιος, ἡ: coagulation
Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe	ταλαιπωρία, ἡ: hard work, hardship
εὐψυχος, -ον: courageous	φθορή, ἡ: corruption
ἦθος, -εος, τό: character	ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

εἶναι: also in ind. st., “that their statures are most different”

πλείονες ... ἡ: “more corruptions than in”

ἐούσησιν: pr. part. dat. of εἶμι agreeing with μεταλλαγῇσι, “the changes when they are frequent”

παραπλησίησι καὶ ὁμοίησιν (sc. ὥρησι): “than in (seasons) that are similar” i.e. to each other

νομίζω ... εἶναι: ind. st., “I believe that they are”

ἐν μὲν τῷ αἰεὶ παραπλησίῳ: sc. (γένει): “while in the perpetually similar (race)”

ράθυμής ἢ δειλὴ αὖξεται, ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ταλαιπωρίας καὶ τῶν πόνων αἱ ἀνδρεῖαι. διὰ τοῦτό εἰσι μαχιμώτεροι οἱ τὴν Εὐρώπην οἰκέοντες, καὶ διὰ τοὺς νόμους, ὅτι οὐ βασιλεύονται ὥσπερ οἱ Ἀσιηνοί. ὅκου γὰρ βασιλεύονται, ἐκεῖ ἀνάγκη δειλοτάτους εἶναι. εἴρηται δέ μοι καὶ πρότερον. αἱ γὰρ ψυχὰι δεδούλωνται καὶ οὐ βούλονται παρακινδυνεύειν ἐκόντες εἰκῇ ὑπὲρ ἀλλοτρίας δυνάμιος. ὅσοι δὲ αὐτόνομοι — ὑπὲρ ἑωυτῶν γὰρ τοὺς κινδύνους αἰρεῦνται καὶ οὐκ ἄλλων — προθυμεῦνται ἐκόντες καὶ ἐς τὸ δεινὸν ἔρχονται. τὰ γὰρ ἀριστεῖα τῆς νίκης αὐτοὶ φέρονται. οὕτως οἱ νόμοι οὐχ ἥκιστα τὴν εὐψυχίην ἐργάζονται.

αἰρέομαι: to choose

ἀλλότριος, -η, -ον: of or belonging to another

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity

ἀνδρεία, ἡ: manliness, manly spirit

ἀριστεία, τά: the prize of bravest

αὔξω: to make large, increase, augment

αὐτόνομος, -ον: independent

βασιλεύω: to rule

βούλομαι: to will, wish

δειλὴ, ἡ: cowardice

δειλός, -ή, -όν: cowardly, craven

δεινός, -ή, -όν: fearful, terrible, dread, dire

δουλόω: to make a slave of, enslave

δύναμις, -ιος, ἡ: a power, ability, property

εἰκῇ: rashly, at a venture

ἐκῶν: willing, of free will, readily

ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor

ἔρχομαι: to come or go

Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe

εὐψυχία, ἡ: good courage, high spirit

ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least

κίνδυνος, ό: a danger

μάχιμος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike

νίκη, ἡ: victory

νόμος, ό: law, custom

οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy

ὅσος, -η, -ον: whoever

παρακινδυνεύω: to do a daring thing

πόνος, ό: work

προθυμέομαι: to be eager

ταλαιπωρία, ἡ: hard work, hardship

φέρομαι: to bear for oneself, to win

ψυχή, ἡ: soul

ὅκου βασιλεύονται: pr. pas., “where they are ruled”

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, “has been said”

δεδούλωνται: perf. pas., “have been enslaved”

αἰρεῦνται: pr. (= αἰροῦνται), “they chose”

Hippocrates

The differences among various peoples within Europe are due to these environmental factors.

[24] τὸ μὲν οὖν ὅλον καὶ τὸ ἅπαν οὕτως ἔχει περί τε τῆς Εὐρώπης καὶ τῆς Ἀσίας. ἔνιαι δὲ καὶ ἐν τῇ Εὐρώπῃ φύλα διάφορα ἕτερα ἑτέροιαι καὶ τὰ μεγέθη καὶ τὰς μορφὰς καὶ τὰς ἀνδρείας. τὰ δὲ διαλλάσσοντα ταῦτά ἐστιν, ἃ καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν πρότερον εἴρηται. ἔτι δὲ σαφέστερον φράσω. ὁκόσοι μὲν χώραν ὀρεινὴν τε οἰκεῖουσιν καὶ τρηχεῖαν καὶ ὑψηλὴν καὶ ἔνυδρον, καὶ αἱ μεταβολαὶ αὐτοῖσι γίνονται τῶν ὥρων μέγα διάφοροι, ἐνταῦθα εἰκὸς εἶδεα μεγάλα εἶναι, καὶ πρὸς τὸ ταλαίπωρον καὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον εὖ πεφυκότα, καὶ τό τε ἄγριον καὶ τὸ θηριῶδες αἱ τοιαῦται φύσεις οὐχ ἥκιστα ἔχουσιν.

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: living in the fields

ἀνδρείη, ἡ: manliness, manhood, manly spirit

ἀνδρεῖος, -η, -ον: manly

ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: all, the whole

Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia

διαλλάσσω: to vary

διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike

εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure

εἰκός: likely

ἐνιαι: to be in

ἐνυδρος, -ον: with water in it

Εὐρώπη, ἡ: Europe

ἥκιστος, -η, -ον: least

θηριώδης, -ες: full of wild beasts

μέγεθος, -εος, τό: stature

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

μορφή, ἡ: form, shape

οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy

ὅλος, -η, -ον: whole, entire

ὀρεινός, -ή, -όν: mountainous, hilly

σαφής, -ές: clear, plain, distinct, manifest

ταλαίπωρος, -ον: suffering, hard-working

τρηχεῖος, -η, -ον: rugged

ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, high-raised

φράζω: to point out, indicate

φῶλον, τό: a race, tribe, class

φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

τὸ ἅπαν (sc. ἡθος): "the whole (character)"

ἕτερα ἑτέροιαι: "different each from the others"

καὶ τὰ μεγέθη: acc. resp., "both in stature, etc."

διαλλάσσοντα: pr. part. n. pl., "these are the variations"

εἴρηται: perf. of λέγω, "has been said"

μέγα: adv., "very"

εἰκὸς ... εἶναι: "(it is) likely that their stature are"

εὖ πεφυκότα: perf. part. pred. of εἶδεα, "statures that are naturally well suited"

ὁκόσοι δὲ κοῖλα χωρία καὶ λειμακώδεα καὶ πνιγερὰ καὶ τῶν θερμῶν πνευμάτων πλέον μέρος μετέχουσιν ἢ τῶν ψυχρῶν ὕδασί τε χρέονται θερμοῖσιν, οὗτοι δὲ μεγάλοι μὲν οὐκ ἂν εἴησαν οὐδὲ κανονίαι, ἐς εὖρος δὲ πεφυκότες καὶ σαρκώδεις καὶ μελανότριχες, καὶ αὐτοὶ μέλανες μᾶλλον ἢ λευκότεροι, φλεγματίαι τε ἦσσαν ἢ χολώδεις· τὸ δὲ ἀνδρεῖον καὶ τὸ ταλαίπωρον ἐν τῇ ψυχῇ, φύσει μὲν οὐκ ἂν ὁμοίως ἐνείη, νόμος δὲ προσγενόμενος ἀπεργάσσιτ' ἄν. καὶ εἰ μὲν ποταμοὶ ἐνείησαν ἐν τῇ χώρῃ, οἷτινες ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξοχετεύουσι τό τε

ἀνδρεῖος, -η, -ον: of or for a man
ἀπεργάζομαι: to produce, to bring to
perfection
ἐνείμι: to be in
ἐξοχετεύω: draw off
εὖρος, -εος, τό: breadth, width
ἦσσαν, ἦσσον: less
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
κανονίας, -ου, ό: a well-made man
κοῖλος, -η, -ον: hollow, hollowed
λειμακώδης, -ες: like meadows, grassy
λευκός, -ή, -όν: light, bright, brilliant
μελανότριξ, -τριχος: black-haired
μέλας, -αινα, μέλαν: black, swarthy
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
μετέχω: share in, take part in

νόμος, ό: custom, law, ordinance
ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
πλέων, -ον: more (than)
πνιγερός, -ή, -όν: stifling hot
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
προσγίνομαι: to attach oneself to
σαρκώδης, -ες: fleshy
ταλαίπωρος, -ον: suffering, miserable
φλεγματίας, -ου, ό: a phlegmatic person
φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth
χολώδης, -ες: like bile or gall, bilious
χρέομαι: to use (+ dat.)
χώρη, ή: a space, place, region
χωρίον, τό: a place district
ψυχή, ή: breath
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill

πνευμάτων: gen. pl. after μέρος, “larger share of winds”
ἢ τῶν ψυχρῶν: comparative after πλέον, “share of hot winds more than cold ones”
ἂν εἴησαν: pr. opt. potential of εἶμι, “these would not be”
πεφυκότες: perf. part., “being naturally inclined toward”
ἦσσαν ἢ: “phlegmatic less than bilious” i.e. more likely to be bilious
οὐκ ἂν ἐνείη: pr. opt. pot. of ἐν-εἶμι, “would not be in the soul”
προσγενόμενος: ao. part. with cond. force, “if law were to become attached”
ἀπεργάσσιτ' ἄν: apodosis of fut. less viv. cond., “the law would produce (courage and endurance)”
εἰ ἐνείησαν ... ἂν εἴησαν: pr. opt. of ἐν-εἶμι and εἶμι in fut. less. viv. cond., “if there were rivers in the land ... these would be healthy”

Hippocrates

στάσιμον καὶ τὸ ὄμβριον, οὗτοι ἂν ὑγιηροί τε εἶσαν καὶ λαμπροί. εἰ μέντοι ποταμοὶ μὲν μὴ εἶσαν, τὰ δὲ ὕδατα λιμναῖα τε καὶ στάσιμα πίνουσιν καὶ ἐλώδεα, ἀνάγκη τὰ τοιαῦτα εἶδεα προγαστρότερα καὶ σπληνώδεα εἶναι. ὁκόσοι δὲ ὑψηλὴν τε οἰκέουσι χώραν καὶ λείην καὶ ἀνεμώδεα καὶ ἔνυδρον, εἰεν ἂν εἶδεα μεγάλοι καὶ ἑωυτοῖσι παραπλήσιοι· ἀνανδρότεροι δὲ καὶ ἡμερώτεροι αἱ γινώμηναι. ὁκόσοι δὲ λεπτά τε καὶ ἄνυδρα καὶ ψιλὰ, τῇσι μεταβολῇσι τῶν ὥρέων οὐκ εὐκρητα, ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ χώρῃ τὰ εἶδεα εἰκὸς σκληρά τε εἶναι καὶ ἔντονα, καὶ ξανθότερα ἢ μελάντερα, καὶ τὰ ἥθεα καὶ τὰς

ἀνάγκη, ἡ: necessity	μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν: black
ἀνανδρος, -ον: unmanly	μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing
ἀνεμώδης, -ες: windy	ξανθός, -ή, -όν: yellow
ἄνυδρος, -ον: wanting water, waterless	οἰκέω: to inhabit, occupy
γνώμη, ἡ: a mind	ὄμβριος, -ον: rainy (water)
εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure	παραπλήσιος, -ον: nearly resembling
εἰκός: likely	πίνω: to drink
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy, fen	ποταμός, ὁ: a river, stream
ἔντονος, -ον: well-strung, sinewy	προγαστρότερος: "more pot-bellied"
ἔνυδρος, -ον: with water in it	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
εὐκρατος, -ον: well-mixed, temperate	σπληνώδης, -ες: having a large spleen
ἥθος, -εος, τό: an accustomed place	στάσιμος, -ον: standing (water)
ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame	ὑγιηρός, -ή, -όν: good for the health, wholesome
λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, brilliant, radiant	ὑψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised
λείος, -η, -ον: smooth, plain, not embroidered	χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, sparse	ψιλός, -η, -ον: bare
λιμναῖος, -η, -ον: marshy	ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

εἰ μὴ εἶσαν ... πίνουσιν: pr. opt., "if there were no rivers ... if they would drink" in past gen. cond.

ἀνάγκη (sc. εἴη ἂν): "it would be necessary" + inf.

εἰεν ἂν: potential opt., "they would be great"

ἑωυτοῖσι: dat. refl., "to each other"

ὁκόσοι (sc. οἰκέουσι): "those who (inhabit)"

λεπτά (sc. χωρία): "sparse (places)"

οὐκ εὐκρητα: pred., "(places) not moderate"

εἰκὸς (sc. ἐστι) εἶναι: "it is likely that statures are"

ὀργὰς αὐθάδεάς τε καὶ ἰδιογνώμονας. ὅκου γὰρ μεταβολαί εἰσι πυκνόταται τῶν ὠρέων καὶ πλείστον διάφοροι αὐταὶ ἐωυτῇσιν, ἐκεῖ καὶ τὰ εἶδεα καὶ τὰ ἥθεα καὶ τὰς φύσεις εὐρήσεις πλείστον διαφερούσας. μέγισται μὲν οὖν εἰσιν αὐταὶ τῆς φύσεως αἱ διαλλαγαί· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἡ χώρα ἐν ᾗ ἂν τις τρέφεται, καὶ τὰ ὕδατα. εὐρήσεις γὰρ ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς χώρας τῇ φύσει ἀκολουθεύοντα καὶ τὰ εἶδεα τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ τοὺς τρόπους. ὅκου μὲν γὰρ ἡ γῆ πείρα καὶ μαλθακὴ καὶ ἔνυδρος, καὶ τὰ ὕδατα κάρτα μετέωρα, ὥστε θερμὰ εἶναι τοῦ

ἀκολουθεῖν: to follow

αὐθάδης, -ες: self-willed, stubborn

γῆ, ἡ: earth

διαλλαγή, ἡ: difference

διαφέρω: to differ

διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike

εἶδος, -εος, τό: form, shape, figure

ἐνυδρος, -ον: with water in it

ἔπειτα: next (in importance)

εὐρίσκω: to find

ἥθος, -εος, τό: an accustomed place

θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm

ἰδιογνώμων, -ον: independent

κάρτα: very

μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft

μέγιστος, -η, -ον: greatest

μεταβολή, ἡ: a change, changing

μετέωρος, -ον: raised from the ground

ὀργή, ἡ: natural impulse, disposition, nature

πείρος, -η, -ον: fat, rich

πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest

πλῆθος, -εος, τό: a great number, a throng, crowd, multitude

πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, frequent

τρέφω: to thicken or congeal

τρόπος, δ: a turn, way, manner

χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region

ὥρη, ἡ: a period, season

πλείστον: adv., “most different”

ἐωυτῇσιν: dat., “different from each other”

εὐρήσεις: fut., “you will find”

διαφερούσας: pr. part. pred. of τὰς φύσεις, “constitutions differing”

αὐταὶ αἱ διαλλαγαί: “these differences”

ἐν ᾗ ἂν τις τρέφεται: pr. subj. in gen. rel. cl., “in which someone is raised”

ἐπὶ τὸ πλῆθος: “for the most part”

ἀκολουθεύοντα: pr. part. in ind. st. after εὐρήσεις, “you will find that the characters conform to” + dat.

καὶ τοὺς τρόπους: also the subj. of ἀκολουθεύοντα, “and their manners”

ὥστε εἶναι: res. cl., “so that they are hot”

Hippocrates

θέρεος, καὶ τοῦ χειμῶνος ψυχρὰ, καὶ τῶν ὥρέων καλῶς κεῖται,
 ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι σαρκώδεές εἰσι καὶ ἄναρθροι καὶ
 ὑγροὶ, καὶ ἀταλαίπωροι, καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν κακοὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ.
 τό τε ῥάθυμον καὶ τὸ ὑπνηρόν ἔνεστιν ἐν αὐτοῖς ἰδεῖν· ἔς τε
 τὰς τέχνας παχέες καὶ οὐ λεπτοὶ οὐδ' ὀξέες. ὅκου δ' ἐστὶν ἡ
 χώρα ψιλὴ τε καὶ ἄνυδρος καὶ τρηχεία, καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ χειμῶνος
 πιεζομένη, καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ ἡλίου κεκαυμένη, ἐνταῦθα δὲ σκληροὺς
 τε καὶ ἰσχνοὺς καὶ διηρθρωμένους καὶ ἐντόνους καὶ δασέας ἂν
 ἴδοις· τό τε ἐργατικὸν ἐνεὸν ἐν τῇ φύσει τῇ τοιαύτῃ καὶ τὸ

ἀναρθρος, -ον: without visible joints (i.e. because of being fat)	ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen
ἀνύδρος, -ον: waterless	παχύς, -εία: thick, dense
ἀταλαίπωρος, -ον: indifferent, careless	πιέζω: to press, squeeze, press tight
δασύς, -εία, -ύ: shaggy, rough	ῥάθυμος, -ον: slack
διαρθρώω: to divide by joints, to articulate	σαρκώδης, -ες: fleshy
ἐντονος, -ον: well-strung, sinewy	σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
ἐργατικός, -ή, -όν: given to labor, active	τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill, craft in work
θέρος, -εος, τό: summer, summertime	τραχύς, -εία, -ύ: rugged, rough
ἰσχνός, -ή, -όν: dry, withered, lean,	ὑγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, running, fluid
meager	ὑπνηρός, -ή, -όν: drowsy
καίω: to burn, kindle	χειμῶν, -ῶνος, ὁ: winter
κακός, -ή, -όν: inferior	χώρα, ἡ: a space, place, region
κεῖμαι: to be situated	ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: delicate, subtle	ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
	ᾠρη, ἡ: a period, season

τοῦ θέρεος: gen. of time within which, “in summer”
 καλῶς κεῖται: “and is situated well”
 τὴν ψυχὴν: acc. resp., “cowardly in spirit”
 ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ: “for the most,” the ὥς makes it only approximate.
 ἰδεῖν: ao. inf., “it is possible to see”
 κεκαυμένη: perf. part., “burned”
 διηρθρωμένους: perf. part., “well-articulated” i.e. with good joints
 ἂν ἴδοις: ao. opt. pot., “you might see”
 ἐνεὸν: pr. part. of ἐν-εἶμι in ind. st. after εὐρήσεις, “you will find that activity is in such a nature”

ἄγρυπνον, τὰ τε ἥθεα καὶ τὰς ὀργὰς αὐθάδεας καὶ
ιδιογνώμονας, τοῦ τε ἀγρίου μᾶλλον μετέχοντας ἢ τοῦ ἡμέρου,
ἐς τε τὰς τέχνας ὀξυτέρους τε καὶ συνετωτέρους καὶ τὰ
πολέμια ἀμείνους εὐρήσεις: καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐν τῇ γῇ φνόμενα
πάντα ἀκόλουθα ἐόντα τῇ γῇ. αἱ μὲν ἐναντιώταται φύσιές τε
καὶ ιδέαι ἔχουσιν οὕτως. ἀπὸ δὲ τούτων τεκμαιρόμενος τὰ
λοιπὰ ἐνθυμέεσθαι, καὶ οὐχ ἀμαρτήση.

ἄγριος, -η, -ον: wild	ιδέα, ἡ: form
ἄγρυπνος, -ον: vigilant	ιδιογνώμων, -ον: holding one's own opinion, independent
ἀκόλουθος, -ον: following, attending on (+ dat.)	λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest
ἀμαρτάνω: to miss	μετέχω: to partake of, share in
ἀμείνων, -ον: better, abler	ὀξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen
αὐθάδης, -ες: self-willed, stubborn	ὀργή, ἡ: natural impulse, temperament, disposition
γῆ, ἡ: earth	πολέμιος, -η, -ον: of or belonging to war
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite	συνετός, -ή, -όν: intelligent
ἐνθυμέομαι: consider well, reflect on, ponder	τεκμαίρομαι: to fix by a mark or boundary
εὕρισκω: to find	τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill
ἥθος, -εος, τό: an accustomed place	φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth
ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, tamed, reclaimed	

τὰ ἥθεα: acc. resp., “with regard to character”
τὰς ὀργὰς (sc. οὐσας): also in ind. st., “that their dispositions are”
μετέχοντας (sc. ἀνθρώπους): also in ind. st., “that the men *share in*” + gen.
μᾶλλον ἢ: “more than”
ὀξυτέρους τε καὶ συνετωτέρους καὶ ἀμείνους: acc. pl pred. agreeing with
ἀνθρώπους understood, “that men are keener, etc.”
τὰ πολέμια: acc. resp., “in war”
φνόμενα: pr. part., “the other things *growing*”
ἐόντα: pr. part. with εὐρήσεις understood, “that all other things *are*”
τεκμαιρόμενος: pr. part., “establishing from these things a boundary” i.e. making
these ideas a basis for thinking
ἐνθυμέεσθαι: pr. inf. as imper., “consider the rest”
οὐχ ἀμαρτήση: fut., “you will not miss”

Ἱπποκράτους

Ὁρκος

The Hippocratic

Oath

The Hippocratic Oath
ΙΠΠΟΚΡΑΤΟΥΣ ΟΡΚΟΣ

ὄμνυμι Ἀπόλλωνα ἱητρὸν καὶ Ἀσκληπιὸν καὶ Ὑγίαν
καὶ Πανάκειαν καὶ θεοὺς πάντας τε καὶ πάσας, ἱστορας
ποιεῦμενος, ἐπιτελέα ποιήσῃν κατὰ δύναμιν καὶ κρίσιν ἐμὴν
ὄρκον τόνδε καὶ συγγραφὴν τήνδε: ἡγήσεσθαι μὲν τὸν
διδάξαντά με τὴν τέχνην ταύτην ἴσα γενέτησιν ἐμοῖς, καὶ βίου
κοινώσεσθαι, καὶ χρεῶν χρητίζοντι μετάδοσιν ποιήσεσθαι, καὶ
γένος τὸ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ἀδελφοῖς ἴσον ἐπικρινεῖν ἄρρεσι, καὶ

ἀδελφός, ὅ: a brother	ἴστωρ, -ορος, ὅ: a judge, witness
Ἀπόλλων, -ωνος, ὅ: Apollo	κοινόω: to make common, be a partner in (+ gen.)
ἄρρην, -εν: male	κρίσις, -ιος, ἡ: discernment, judgment
Ἀσκληπιός, ὅ: Asclepius	μετάδοσις, -εως, ἡ: a giving, sharing
βίος, ὅ: life	ὄμνυμι: to swear
γενέτης, -ου, ὅ: a father, parent	ὄρκος, ὅ: an oath
γένος, -εος, τό: a race, family	Πανάκεια, ἡ: Panacea
διδάσκω: to teach X (acc.) to Y (acc.)	ποιέω: to make, do
δύναμις, -ιος, ἡ: power, strength, ability	συγγραφὴ, ἡ: a written contract, bond
ἐπικρίνω: to decide, consider	τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill
ἐπιτελής, -ές: completed, accomplished	Ὑγία, ἡ: Hygiene
ἡγέομαι: to go before, consider	χρέος, τό: something needed
ἱητρός, ὅ: one who heals, a physician	χρήζω: to need, lack
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as	

Ἀσκληπιὸν: acc. with ὄμνυμι “I swear by Asclepius” Asclepius is the son of Apollo and the god of healing

Ὑγίαν: “Hygiene” and “Panacea” are two of the daughters of Asclepius

ποιεῦμενος: pr. part. nom. (=ποιούμενος) “I, making them witnesses”

ἐπιτελέα: acc. pred. agreeing with ὄρκον “to make the oath accomplished”

ποιήσῃν: fut. inf. complementing ὄμνυμι

ἡγήσεσθαι: fut. inf. also complementing ὄμνυμι “I swear to consider”

τὸν διδάξαντα: ao. part. “the one who taught me”

ἴσα: neut. pl. acc. adverbial, “equally to” + dat.

κοινώσασθαι: fut. inf. with ὄμνυμι “to be a partner of” + gen.

χρεῶν: gen. pl. after μετάδοσιν “sharing of needed things”

χρητίζοντι: pr. part. dat. ind. obj. “to him needing”

ποιήσεσθαι: fut. inf. also after ὄμνυμι “to make a sharing” i.e. to share + gen.

τὸ ἐξ αὐτοῦ: an attributive phrase modifying γένος “the offspring of him”

ἴσον: neut. acc. pred. of γένος “to consider the family equal to” + dat.

ἐπικρινεῖν: fut. inf. after ὄμνυμι

Hippocrates

διδάξειν τὴν τέχνην ταύτην, ἣν χρητίζωσι μανθάνειν, ἄνευ μισθοῦ καὶ συγγραφῆς, παραγγελίης τε καὶ ἀκροήσιος καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς ἀπάσης μαθήσιος μετάδοσιν ποιήσεσθαι υἱοῖς τε ἐμοῖς καὶ τοῖς τοῦ ἐμὲ διδάξαντος, καὶ μαθητῇσι συγγεγραμμένοις τε καὶ ὠρκισμένοις νόμῳ ἱητρικῷ, ἄλλῳ δὲ οὐδενί. διαιτήμασί τε χρήσομαι ἐπ' ὠφελείῃ καμνόντων κατὰ δύνάμιν καὶ κρίσιν ἐμήν, ἐπὶ δηλήσει δὲ καὶ ἀδικίῃ εἵρξειν. οὐ δώσω δὲ οὐδὲ

ἀδικίῃ, ἥ: wrongdoing, injustice	μανθάνω: to learn
ἀκρόησις, -ιος, ἥ: a hearing, listening	μετάδοσις, -ιος, ἥ: a giving, sharing
ἄνευ: without (+ gen.)	μισθός, ὁ: wages, pay, hire
δήλησις, -ιος, ἥ: ruin, bane	νόμος, ὁ: a custom, law
διαίτημα, -ατος, τό: a regimen, diet	ὀρκίζω: to bind by oath
διδάσκω: to teach	παραγγελίῃ, ἥ: a command, order
δίδωμι: to give	ποιέω: to make, do
δύναμις, -ιος, ἥ: power, strength, ability	συγγραφῇ, ἥ: a written contract, bond
ἔργω: to keep safe, keep from	συγγράφω: to write down, sign a contract
ἱητρικός, -ή, -όν: of a physician, medical	τέχνη, ἥ: art, skill
κάμνω: to be sick, suffer from illness	υἱός, ὁ: a son
κρίσις, -ιος, ἥ: discernment, judgment	χρέομαι: to use
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, rest	χρήζω: to need, want (+ inf.)
μάθησις, -ιος, ἥ: a learning	ὠφέλειῃ, ἥ: help, aid, benefit
μαθητής, -οῦ, ὁ: a learner, pupil	

διδάξειν: fut. inf. “to teach”

ἣν χρητίζωσι: pr. subj. in prot. of pr. gen. condition, “if they desire” + inf. (then I swear to teach)

ἀκροήσιος ... μαθήσιος: gen. sing. with μετάδοσιν, “share of oral instruction ... of learning”

ποιήσεσθαι: fut. inf. with ὁμνυμι, “to make a sharing”

τοῖς (sc. υἱοῖς): dat. ind. obj. “to the sons”

τοῦ διδάξαντος: ao. part. gen. “(to the sons) of the one who taught”

συγγεγραμμένοις: perf. part. dat. pl. “to those who have signed”

ὠρκισμένοις: perf. part. dat. “to those who have sworn”

ἄλλῳ δὲ οὐδενί: dat. ind. obj. “but to no other”

διαιτήμασι: dat. pl. after χρήσομαι “I will use dietary regimes”

ἐπ' ὠφελείῃ: “for the benefit of” + gen.

ἐπὶ δηλήσει: “as a check upon bane”

εἵρξειν: fut. inf. after ὁμνυμι “to keep them safe”

οὐ δώσω: fut. “I will not give”

The Hippocratic Oath

φάρμακον οὐδενὶ αἰτηθεὶς θανάσιμον, οὐδὲ ὑψηγήσομαι
 συμβουλίην τοιήνδε: ὁμοίως δὲ οὐδὲ γυναικὶ πεσσὸν φθόριον
 δώσω. ἀγνῶς δὲ καὶ ὁσίως διατηρήσω βίον τὸν ἐμὸν καὶ
 τέχνην τὴν ἐμήν. οὐ τεμέω δὲ οὐδὲ μὴν λιθιῶντας, ἐκχωρήσω
 δὲ ἐργάτησιν ἀνδράσι πρήξιος τῆσδε. ἐς οἰκίας δὲ ὁκόσας ἂν
 εἰσὼ, ἐσελεύσομαι ἐπ' ὠφελείῃ καμνόντων, ἐκτὸς ἐὼν πάσης
 ἀδικίης ἐκουσίης καὶ φθορίης, τῆς τε ἄλλης καὶ ἀφροδισίων
 ἔργων ἐπὶ τε γυναικείων σωμάτων καὶ ἀνδρῶν, ἐλευθέρων τε

ἀγνός, -ή, -όν: full of religious awe
 ἀδικίη, ἡ: wrongdoing, injustice
 αἰτέω: to ask, beg
 ἀνδρῶς, -η, -ον: of men, male
 ἀνὴρ, ὁ: a man
 ἀφροδίσιος, -η, -ον: belonging to
 Aphrodite
 βίος, ὁ: life
 γυναικεῖος, -η, -ον: of women, female
 γυνή, ἡ: a woman
 διατηρέω: to watch closely, observe,
 maintain
 δίδωμι: to give
 εἰσερχομαι: to go in, enter
 ἐκτός: outside
 ἐκχωρέω: to depart, give way
 ἐλεύθερος, -η, -ον: free
 ἐργάτης, -ον, ὁ: a workman, practitioner

θανάσιμος, -ον: deadly, mortal
 κάμνω: to be sick, suffer from illness
 λιθιάω: to suffer from (kidney) stones
 οἰκίη, ἡ: a home
 ὅμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
 ὅσιος, -η, -ον: hallowed
 πεσσός, ὁ: a pessary (for abortion)
 πρήξις, -ιος, ἡ: a doing, action
 συμβουλίη, ἡ: advice, counsel
 σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body
 τέμνω: to cut
 τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill
 ὑψηγέομαι: to guide
 φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine
 φθορίη, ἡ: corruption, mischief
 φθόριος, -ον: destructive
 ὠφέλεια, ἡ: help, aid, benefit

αἰτηθεὶς: ao. pas. part. concessive, “although having been asked”
 πεσσὸν φθόριον: a stone-shaped object inserted to prompt an abortion
 διατηρήσω: fut. “I will maintain”
 οὐ τεμέω: fut. of τέμνω “I will not cut”
 οὐδὲ μὴν: “not even those”
 λιθιῶντας: pr. part. “those suffering from stones”
 ἀνδράσι: dat. of sep. after ἐκχωρήσω “I will yield to men”
 πρήξιος: gen. s. (= πράξεως) “the practioners of this practice”
 ὁκόσας ἂν εἰσὼ: pr. subj. in gen. rel. cl. “into whatever homes I enter”
 ἐσελεύσομαι: fut. of εἰσ-έρχομαι, “I will enter”
 καμνόντων: pr. part. gen. “of those who are ill”
 ἐκτὸς ἐὼν: pr. part. “being outside of” + gen.
 ἀφροδισίων ἔργων: “of the works of Aphrodite” i.e. of sex

Hippocrates

καὶ δούλων. ἃ δ' ἂν ἐν θεραπείῃ ἢ ἴδω ἢ ἀκούσω, ἢ καὶ ἄνευ
 θεραπείης κατὰ βίον ἀνθρώπων, ἃ μὴ χρή ποτε ἐκλαλῆσθαι
 ἔξω, σιγήσομαι, ἄρρητα ἡγεύμενος εἶναι τὰ τοιαῦτα. ὅρκον
 μὲν οὖν μοι τόνδε ἐπιτελέα ποιέοντι, καὶ μὴ συγχέοντι, εἴη
 ἐπαύρασθαι καὶ βίου καὶ τέχνης δοξαζομένῳ παρὰ πᾶσιν
 ἀνθρώποις ἐς τὸν αἰεὶ χρόνον: παραβαίνοντι δὲ καὶ
 ἐπιорκέοντι, τᾶναντία τούτων.

ἀκούω: to hear	ἐπιτελής, -ές: completed, accomplished
ἄνθρωπος, ὁ: a man	ἡγέομαι: to go before, consider
ἄρρητος, -η, -ον: unspoken, unsaid	θεραπείη, ἡ: a service, treatment
βίος, ὁ: life	ὅρκος, ὁ: an oath
δοξάζω: to think, suppose	παραβαίνω: to go beside, transgress
δοῦλος, -η, -ον: enslaved	ποιέω: to make, do
ἐκλαλέω: to speak out, divulge	σιγάω: to keep silent
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite	συγχέω: to confound, destroy
ἔξω: out	τέχνη, ἡ: art, skill
ἐπαυρέω: to partake of, share	χρή: it is necessary
ἐπιорκέω: to swear falsely	χρόνος, ὁ: time

ἃ δ' ἂν ἴδω: ao. subj. of *εἶδον* in gen. rel. cl. “whatever I see”
 ἀκούσω: ao. subj. “whatever I hear”
 καὶ ἄνευ: “even apart from” + gen.
 ἐκλαλέεσθαι: pr. inf. complementing *χρή* “what is not necessary to spread abroad”
 ἡγεύμενος: pr. part. (=ἡγούμενος) “considering such things” + inf.
 ἐπιτελέα: acc. pred. “making this oath fulfilled”
 ποιέοντι: pr. part. dat. “to me making”
 μὴ συγχέοντι: pr. part. dat. “and to me not breaking” *μὴ* indicates a conditional
 sense “if I do not break”
 εἴη: opt. wish for the future “may it be possible” + inf.
 ἐπαύρασθαι: ao. inf. “to share in” + gen.
 δοξαζομένῳ: pr. part. dat. also agreeing with *μοι* “being famous”
 παραβαίνοντι: pr. part. dat. “but (to me) deviating”
 τᾶναντία (sc. *εἴη*): “may the opposite things be”

Glossary of Medical Terms

Medical Glossary

Hippocrates' *On Airs, Water, and Places* is full of anatomical and nosological terms that occur rarely, if at all, in more canonical Greek texts. Some terms will no doubt be familiar to the reader, while others require knowledge of medicine or anatomy. Medical terms are briefly glossed throughout the text, but for some of the more complicated terms we have included fuller definitions, as well as explanations of conditions, in the following glossary.*

αἰμορροΐς, ἡ: hemorrhoids (from **αἷμα** + **ῥέω**, “a flow of blood”); an engorged, dilated and easily broken varicosity around the anus, often accompanied by intense itching, pain, and rectal bleeding

δυσεντερία, ἡ: dysentery (from **δυσ-** “bad” + **ἔντερα** “bowels”); a disease caused by infection and characterized by inflammation of the intestines, especially the colon (large intestine), accompanied by pus in the feces, fever, pain in the abdomen, low volume of diarrhea, and possible blood in the feces

ἡπιάλος, ὁ: ague; an intermittent fever marked by cold and hot fits; when used in conjunction with fever (**πυρετός**), the chills (p. 12)

ἰκτερος, ὁ: jaundice; a morbid condition characterized by yellowness of the eyes and skin; usually caused by a buildup of bile in the liver, which is then absorbed into the blood; often a sign of a problem with the liver, gallbladder, or pancreas

ισχιάς, -άδος, ἡ: sciatica; compression or irritation of the sciatic nerve characterized by pain radiating down through the lower back, buttocks and the back of the thigh, causing numbness in the lower leg and foot

κάθαρσις, -ιος, ἡ: generally, a cleansing, evacuation; **ἐπιμήνιος κάθαρσις** (“monthly evacuation,” p. 87), menstruation

κατάρροος, ὁ: a catarrh (from **κατά** + **ῥέω**, “to flow down” i.e. from the head); an inflammation of the mucus membranes in the head occurring in response to infection; results in excessive discharge or buildup of mucus (phlegm) in the nose or throat; a symptom of the common cold

καῦσος, -εος, τό: causus (from **καίω**, “to burn”); an ardent, bilious, remittent fever; a particular condition as opposed to the more general **πυρετός** (“fever”)

κέδματα, -ων, τά: an uncertain morbid affection, which Hippocrates believes to be caused by the continuous riding of horses (p. 88); perhaps an arthritic affection, or aneurysmal condition of the veins or arteries

* This list was compiled with the help of Lu Chen, a recent graduate in Psychobiology at the University of California, Los Angeles and current medical student.

Hippocrates

κήλη, ἡ: a tumor, especially a rupture or hernia (as a result of poor water quality, p. 29, 41)

κίρσος, ὁ: varicose vein; a condition, sometimes painful, in which the veins become abnormally dilated, swollen, and tortuous; most commonly occurring in the legs (p. 30)

λειεντερία, ἡ: leientery; a particular form of diarrhea in which food passes through the body with little or no digestion (p. 53)

λίθος, ὁ: a stone (calculus); a hard, stone-like, mineral concretion that forms in a bodily organ; kidney stones (formed from minerals in the urine) are common

μελαγχολία, ἡ: melancholy, an imbalance of the bodily humors in which black bile (**μέλαινα χολή**) is dominant

νεφρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: nephritis (from **νεφρός**, “kidney”), a disease marked by inflammation of the kidneys (p. 41)

νοῦσος, ἡ/νούσημα, -ατος, τό: a disease, illness; referring to individual instances as well as the overall state (as opposed to **ὑγίειη**, “health”)

πεσός, ὁ: a pessary; a device inserted vaginally as a mean of delivering medication; **πεσσὸς φθόριος**, an abortive pessary (p. 107)

πλευρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: pleurisy; an inflammation of the pleural cavity around the lungs resulting in severe, sharp pain from breathing or coughing; commonly caused by infections (p. 12, 17, 53)

ποδαγρία, ἡ: “savage toe,” gout; a painful joint condition marked by acute, inflammatory arthritis; commonly affects the big toe

πυρετός, ὁ/πυρετώδης, -ες: fever/feverish (from **πῦρ**, “fire”), a general fever

στραγγουρία, ἡ: strangury; retention of urine; frequent, painful, straining urination of small volumes despite a sense of urgency (p. 41)

σφάκελος, ὁ: gangrene, mortification; a condition that arises when a mass of body tissue dies (necrosis); often caused by a lack of blood supply

τεταρταῖος (sc. **πυρετός**), **ὁ:** a quartan fever, an intermittent fever presenting every fourth day, or in 72 hour cycles (p. 28, 49)

ὕδρωψ, -ωπος, ὁ: dropsy; edema, an abnormal accumulation of fluid in the body; marked by swelling

On Airs, Waters, and Places

φθίσις, -ιος, ἥ: generally, emaciation; specifically, tuberculosis, an infectious disease infecting the lungs; characterized heavy coughing, fever, weight loss, and chest pain (p. 20, 54)

φλέγμα, -ατος, τό/φλεγματούδης, -ες: phlegm/phlegmatic, one of the four humors. An humoral imbalance in which phlegm is dominate (a phlegmatic condition) results in a cold, moist, flabby constitution (the opposite of bilious) and the diseases and symptoms associated with it.

χολή, ἥ/χολώδης, -ες: (yellow) bile/choleric, bilious; one of the four humors. An humoral imbalance in which bile is dominate (a bilious condition) results in a hot, dry, sinewy constitution (the opposite of the phlegmatic) and the diseases and symptoms associated with it.

List of Verbs

List of Verbs

The following is a list of verbs that have some irregularity in their conjugation. The principal parts of the Greek verb in order are 1. Present 2. Future 3. Aorist 4. Perfect Active 5. Perfect Middle 6. Aorist Passive, 7. Future Passive. For many verbs not all forms are attested or are only poetic. Verbs are alphabetized under their main stem, followed by various compounds that occur in AWP with a brief definition. Where possible forms found in AWP are given rather than Attic versions (i.e. *χρέομαι* rather than *χράομαι*). A dash (-) before a form means that it occurs only or chiefly with a prefix. The list is based on the list of verbs in H. Smyth, *A Greek Grammar*.

ἄγω: to lead *ἄξω*, 2 aor. *ἤγαγον*, *ἦχα*, *ἤγμαι*, *ἤχθην*

ἀνάγω: to lead up

ἐξάγω: to lead out

συνάγω: to bring together, collect

αἱρέω: to take (mid. to choose) *αἱρήσω*, 2 aor. *εἶλον*, *ἤρηκα*, *ἤρημαι*, *ἤρέθην*

αἶρω: to lift *ἀρῶ*, *ἦρα*, *ἦρκα*, *ἦρμαι*, *ἦρθην*

αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive *αἰσθήσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἦσθόμην*, *ἦσθημαι*

ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken *ἀλώσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἔαλων*, *ἔάλωκα*

ἀλλάσσω: to change *ἀλλάξω*, *ἥλλαξα*, *-ήλλαχα*, *ἥλλαγμαι*, *ἥλλάχθην* or *ἥλλάγην*

ἀπαλλάσσω: to depart from, differ

διαλλάσσω: to change, be different

μεταλλάσσω: to change, alter

ἀμαρτάνω: to fail, go wrong *ἀμαρτήσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἤμαρτον*, *ἡμάρτηκα*, *ἡμάρτημαι*, *ἡμαρτήθην*

διαμαρτάνω: to go astray, make a mistake

ἄπτω: to fasten, (mid.) to touch *ἄψω*, *ἦψα*, *ἦμμαι*, *ἦφθην*

ἄρπάζω: to snatch away *ἄρπάσομαι*, *ἤρπασα*, *ἤρπακα*, *ἤρπασμαι*, *ἤρπάσθην*

ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up

ἄρχω: to be first, begin *ἄρξω*, *ἦρξα*, *ἦργμαι*, *ἦρχθην*

αὐξάνω: to increase *αὔξω*, *ηὔξησα*, *ηὔξηκα*, *ηὔξημαι*, *ηὔξήθην*

ἐπανύξω: to increase, enlarge, augment

ἀφικνέομαι: to arrive at *ἀφ-ίξομαι*, 2 aor. *ἀφ-ικόμην*, *ἀφ-ίγμαι*

βαδίζω: to go *βαδιοῦμαι*, *βεβάδिका*

Hippocrates

βαίνω: to step *βήσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἔβην, βέβηκα*
ἀποβαίνω: to go away, depart, occur

βάλλω: to throw *βαλῶ*, 2 aor. *ἔβαλον, βέβληκα, βέβλημαι, ἐβλήθην*
ἐμβάλλω: to throw in, put in
μεταβάλλω: to turn quickly, change
συμβάλλω: to throw together, contribute
ὑπερβάλλω: to throw over, exceed

βούλομαι: to wish *βουλήσομαι, βεβούλημαι, ἐβουλήθην*

γί(γ)νομαι: to become *γενήσομαι*, 2 aor. *ἐγενόμην*, 2 perf. *γέγονα, γεγέννημαι, ἐγενήθην*
ἐγγίνομαι: to intervene, take place, happen
ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall
περιγίνομαι: to be superior to, overcome
προσγίνομαι: to attach oneself to

γί(γ)νώσκω: to know *γνώσομαι, ἔγνω, ἔγνωκα, ἔγνωσμαι, ἐγνώσθην*
διαγιγνώσκω: to distinguish, discern
καταγιγνώσκω: to remark, discover
προγινώσκω: to know, perceive, learn

δείδω: to fear *δείσομαι, ἔδεισα, δέδοικα*

δείκνυμι: to show *δείξω, ἔδειξα, δέδειχα, δέδειγμαι, ἐδείχθην*

δέχομαι: to receive *δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δέδεγμαι, -εδέχθην*
ὑποδέχομαι: to receive

δέω: to need, lack (mid. ask) *δεήσω, ἐδέησα, δεδέηκα, δεδέημαι, ἐδεήθην*

δίδωμι: to give *δώσω*, 1 aor. *ἔδωκα* in s., 2 aor. in pl. *ἔδομεν, δέδωκα, δέδομαι, ἐδόθην*
ἀναδίδωμι: to hold forth, bestow
ἀποδίδωμι: to give up or back, restore, return
ἐκδίδωμι: to give up, surrender

δοκέω: to think, seem *δόξω, ἔδοξα, δέδογμαι*

δύω: to go down *δύσω, -έδυσα* trans., 2 aor. *ἔδυν* intrans., *δέδυκα, -δέδυμαι, -εδύθην*
ἐγκαταδύνω: sink beneath
ἐνδύω: to put in

ἐγείρω: to wake up *ἐγερῶ, ἤγειρα*, 2 perf. *ἔγρηγορα, ἐγήγερμαι, ἠγέρθην*
ἀνεγείρω: to wake up, rouse
ἐπεγείρω: to awaken, wake up, rouse

εἰμί: to be, fut. *ἔσομαι*

On Airs, Waters, and Places

ἄπειμι: to be absent

ἔνειμι: to be in

πάρειμι: to be near, be present

πρόσειμι: to be present, belong

ἔλκω: to draw **-έλξω, εἴλκυσα, -εἴλκυκα, -εἴλκυμαι, -εἰλκύσθην**

ἔπομαι: to follow **ἔψομαι, 2 aor. ἐσπόμην**

ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor **ἐργάσομαι, ἡργασάμην, εἵργασμαι, ἡργάσθην**

ἀπεργάζομαι: to work out, produce

κατεργάζομαι: to achieve, accomplish

ἔρχομαι: to come or go to, fut. **εἶμι, 2 aor. ἦλθον, 2 perf. ἐλήλυθα**

παρέρχομαι: to go by, pass

προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance

ἐσθίω: to eat **ἔδομαι, 2 aor. ἔφαγον**

εὐρίσκω: to find **εὐρήσω, 2 aor. ἤυρον or εὕρον, ἤυρηκα or εὔρηκα, εὔρημαι, εὐρέθην**

ἔχω: to have **ἔξω, 2 aor. ἔσχον, ἔσχηκα, imperf. εἶχον.**

μετέχω: to partake of, share in

παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply

προσέχω: to hold to

ἔψω: to boil, cook **ἐψήσομαι, ἤψησα, ἤψημαι, ἤψηθην**

συνέψω: to boil together

ζάω: to live **ζήσω, ἔζησα, ἔζηκα**

ἡγέομαι: to go before, lead the way **ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην, ἡγημαι**

διηγέομαι: to set out in detail, describe

προδιηγέομαι: to relate before

ἡδομαι: to be happy, enjoy **ἡσθήσομαι, ἡσθην**

θανμάζω: to wonder, admire, fut. **θαυμάσομαι**

θνήσκω: to die **θανοῦμαι, 2 aor. -έθανον, τέθνηκα**

ἀποθνήσκω: to die

θύω: to sacrifice **θύσω, ἔθυσσα, τέθυκα, τέθυμαι, ἐτύθην**

ἵημι: to let go, relax, to send forth **ἥσω, ἦκα, εἶκα, εἶμαι, εἶθην**

ἀφίημι: to send forth, discharge

δίημι: to discharge

ἵστημι: to make to stand, set **στήσω** shall set, **ἔστησα** set, caused to stand, 2 aor.

ἔστην stood, 1 perf. **ἔστηκα** stand, plup. **εἰστήκη** stood, **ἐστάθην**

Hippocrates

ἐξίστημι: to put out of its place, to change or alter utterly

καθίστημι: to set down, dispose

μεθίστημι: to place in another way, to change

προσίστημι: to approach, occur to

συνίστημι: to set together, combine

ὑφίστημι: to place or set under

καίω: to burn, cauterize **καύσω, ἔκαυσα, -κέκαυκα, κέκαυμαι, ἐκαύθην**

ἐπικαίω: to burn up, cauterize

συγκαίω: to burn up, inflame

καλέω: to call **καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, κέκληκα, κέκλημαι, ἐκλήθην**

κλείω: to shut **κλείσω, ἔκλεισα, κέκλειμαι, ἐκλείσθην**

συγκλείω: to enclose

κόπτω: to strike **κόψω, ἔκοψα, -κέκοφα, κέκομμαι, -εκόπην**

κρίνω: to decide **κρινῶ, ἔκρινα, κέκρικα, κέκριμαι, ἐκρίθην**

ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart; answer

διακρίνω: to separate, distinguish

ἐκκρίνω: to pick out, separate

κτάομαι: to acquire **κτήσομαι, ἐκτησάμην, κέκτημαι** possess

κτείνω: to kill **κτενῶ, ἔκτεινα, 2 perf. -έκτονα**

ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay

κυνέω: to kiss **κυνήσομαι, ἔκυσα**

προσκυνέω: to make obeisance to

λαμβάνω: to take **λήψομαι, ἔλαβον, εἴληφα, εἴλημμαι, ἐλήφθην**

καταλαμβάνω: to seize upon, grasp, befall

ὑπολαμβάνω: to overtake

λανθάνω: to escape notice **λήσω, ἔλαθον, λέληθα**

λέγω: to speak **ἐρέω, εἶπον, εἶρηκα, λέλεγμαι, ἐλέχθην**

διαλέγω: to speak with, converse

προλέγω: to say before

λείπω: to leave **λείψω, ἔλιπον, λέλοιπα, λέλειμμαι, ἐλείφθην**

ἐκλείπω: to leave out, pass over

παραλείπω: to set aside, leave remaining

λύω: to loose **λύσω, ἔλυσα, λέλυκα, λέλυμαι, ἐλύθην**

διαλύω: to loose, undo

μανθάνω: to learn **μαθήσομαι, ἔμαθον, μεμάθηκα**

On Airs, Waters, and Places

μάχομαι: to fight **μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μεμάχημαι**

μέλλω: to intend, be about to **μελλήσω, ἐμέλλησα**

μένω: to stay **μενῶ, ἔμεινα, μεμένηκα**

μίγνυμι: to mix **μείξω, ἔμειξα, μέμειγμαι, ἐμείχθην**

καταμίγνυμι: to mix up, mingle

συμμίγνυμι: to mix together

νομίζω: to believe **νομιῶ, ἐνόμισα, νενόμικα, νενόμισμαι, ἐνομίσθην**

ξηραίνω: to dry **ξηρανῶ, ἐξήρανα, ἐξήρασμαι, ἐξηράνθην**

ἀποξηραίνω: to dry up

ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up

ὄλλυμι: to destroy **ολῶ, -ώλεσα, -ολώλεκα, -όλωλα**

ἀπόλλυμι: to kill, slay

ὁράω: to see **ὄψομαι, 2 aor. εἶδον, ἑώρακα and ἐώρακα, ὤφθην, imperf. ἑώρων**

ἐφοράω: to oversee, look on

οὐρέω: to make water, urinate **οὐρήσομαι**

διουρέω: to pass in urine

ἐξουρέω: to pass with urine

πάσχω: to experience **πείσομαι, 2 aor. ἔπαθον, 2 perf. πέπονθα**

παύω: to stop, cause to cease: **παύσω, ἔπαυσα, πέπαυκα, πέπαυμαι, ἐπαύθην**

πεπαίνω: to ripen **ἐπέπανα, ἐπεπάνθην**

πήγνυμι: to fix, make fast, freeze **πήξω, ἔπηξα, 2 perf. πέπηγα, 2 aor. pass.**

ἐπάγην

πίνω: to drink **πίομαι, 2 aor. ἔπιον, πέπωκα, -πέπομαι, -επόθην**

πίπτω: to fall **πεσοῦμαι, 2 aor. ἔπεσον, πέπτωκα**

ἐμπίπτω: to fall upon

ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon or over

προσπίπτω: to fall upon

πλάσσω: to form **ἔπλασα, πέπλασμαι, ἐπλάσθην**

ἀναπλάσσω: remodel

πλέω: to sail **πλεύσομαι, ἔπλευσα, πέπλευκα, πέπλευσμαι, ἐπλεύσθην**

διαπλέω: to sail across

πνέω: to blow **πνεύσομαι, ἔπνευσα, -πέπνευκα**

Hippocrates

ρέω: to flow **ρῦσσομαι, ἐρρύην, ἐρρύηκα**

ἀπορρέω: to flow away, stream forth

ἐπικαταρρέω: to flow down

παραρρέω: to flow past

ρῆγνυμι: to break **-ρήξω, ῥρηξα, -έρρωγα, ἐρράγην**

καταρῆγνυμι: to break down, burst

σβέννυμι: to quench **σβέσω, ἔσβεσα, ἔσβηκα ἐσβέσθην, 2 aor. pass. ἔσβην**

ἀποσβέννυμι: to be extinguished, cease

σέβομαι: to worship, **ἐσέφθην**

στρέφω: to turn **στρέψω, ἔστρεψα, ἔστραμμαι, ἐστρέφθην**

συστρέφω: to form together, compress

σώζω: to save **σώσω, ἔσωσα, σέσωκα, ἐσώθην**

ταράττω: to stir up **ταράξω, ἐτάραξα, τετάραγμαi, ἐταράχθην**

ἐκταράσσω: to agitate, throw into disorder

τέμνω: to cut **τεμῶ, 2 aor. ἔτεμον, -τέτμηκα, τέτμημαι, ἐτμήθην**

ἐπιτάμνω: to cut on the surface **2 aor. ἔταμον**

τήκω: to melt **τήξω, ἔτηξα, τέτηκα, ἐτάκην**

τίθηναι: to place **θήσω, ἔθηκα, τέθηκα, τέθειμαι (but usu. κείμαι), ἐτέθην**

ἀνατίθηναι: to set up, dedicate

ἐντίθηναι: to put in, introduce

προστίθηναι: to put to

τίκτω: to beget, bring forth **τέξομαι, ἔτεκον, τέτοκα**

τρέπω: to turn **τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τέτροφα, ἐτράπην**

ἀποτρέπω: to turn

τρέφω: to nourish **θρέψω, ἔθρεψα, 2 perf. τέτροφα, τέθραμμαι, ἐτράφην**

ἐκτρέφω: to bring up, rear up

ἐντρέφω: to bring up in, raise in

τρίβω: to rub **τρίψω, ἔτριψα, 2 perf. τέτριφα, τέτριμμαι, ἐτρίβην**

τυγχάνω: to happen **τεύξομαι, ἔτυχον, τετύχηκα. τέτυγμαι, ἐτύχθην**

φαίνω: to show **φανῶ, ἔφηνα, πέφηνα, πέφασμαι, ἐφάνην**

προφαίνω: to bring forth, show

φέρω: to bear **οἶσω, 1 aor. ἤνεγκα, 2 aor. ἤνεγκον, 2 perf. ἐνήνοχα, ἐνήνεγμαι, ἤνέχθην**

διαφέρω: to differ

On Airs, Waters, and Places

ἐπιφέρω: to bring upon

ἐσφέρω: to carry into

περιφέρω: to carry around

προσφέρω: to bring to, apply

συνφέρω: to bring together, compare

φθάνω: to anticipate **φθήσομαι, ἔφθασα, ἔφθην**

φθείρω to corrupt: **φθερῶ, ἔφθειρα, ἔφθαρκα**

διαφθείρω: to destroy utterly

φράζω: to point out **φράσω, ἔφρασα, πέφρακα, πέφρασμαι, ἐφράσθην**

φυλάσσω: to guard **φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα, πεφύλαχα, πεφύλαγμαι, ἐφυλάχθην**

φύω: to bring forth **φύσω, ἔφυσα, 2 aor. ἔφυν, πέφυκα**

ἐκφύω: to grow from, enlarge

ἐμφύω: to implant, (pass.) to grow in

χαίρω: to rejoice at **χαιρήσω, κεχάρηκα, κεχάρημαι, ἐχάρην**

χέω: to pour fut. **χέω, aor. ἔχεα, κέχυκα, κέχυμαι, ἐχύθην**

ἐγχέω: to pour in

ἐπιχέω: to pour over

καταχέω: to pour down

χρέομαι: to use **χρήσομαι, ἐχρησάμην, κέχρημαι, ἐχρήσθην**

ψεύδω: to lie **ψεύσω, ἔψευσα, ἔψευσμαι, ἐψεύσθην**

Glossary

Glossary

A α

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν: good
ἄγγειον, τό: vessel
ἄγριος, -η, -ον: living in the fields, wild, fierce, savage
ἄγω: to lead, carry, bring
ἀδικίη, ἡ: wrongdoing, injustice
Αἰγύπτιος, -η, -ον: Egyptian
αἰδοῖα, τά: genitals
αἰεῖ: always, forever
αἷμα, -ατος, τό: blood
αἰσθάνομαι: to perceive, feel
αἷτιον, τό: a cause
αἷτιος, -η, -ον: blameworthy, culpable, responsible
ἀλέη, ἡ: a shelter, warmth
ἀλίσκομαι: to be taken, conquered, captured
ἀλλά: but
ἀλλήλων: one another, each other
ἄλλος, -η, -ον: another, other
ἄλμυρός, -ή, -όν: salt, briny
ἄλυκός, -ή, -όν: salty, briny
ἅμα: at the time of, together with (+ *dat.*)
ἅμαξα, ἡ: a wagon
ἁμαρτάνω: to miss, wrong
ἀμείνων, -ον: better, abler, stronger
ἀμφότερος, -η, -ον: each, both
ἄν: (indefinite particle; generalizes dependent clauses with subjunctive; indicates contrary-to-fact with independent clauses)
ἀναγκάζω: to force, compel
ἀνάγκη, ἡ: force, constraint, necessity
ἀνάγω: to lead up, i.e. evaporate
ἀνανδρείη, ἡ: want of manhood
ἀναξηραίνω: to dry up
ἄναρθρος, -ον: without (apparent) joints, not articulated
ἀναρπάζω: to snatch up
ἀνατολή, ἡ: a rising, rise
ἀνδρείη, ἡ: manliness, manly spirit
ἀνδρεῖος, -η, -ον: manly
ἄνεμος, ό: wind
ἄνευ: without (+ *gen.*)
ἄνῆρ, ἀνδρός, ό: a man, husband
ἄνθρωπος, ό: a man, person

ἀνίσχω: to hold up, rise
ἄντί: opposite, in return (+ *gen.*)
ἄνυδρος, -ον: waterless, dry
ἄνω: up, upwards
ἀπαλλάσσω: to depart from, differ from (+ *gen.*)
ἅπας, -πασα, -παν: quite all, the whole
ἄπειρος, -ον: unacquainted, without experience of (+ *gen.*)
ἀπεργάζομαι: to work out, produce
ἀπό: from, away from (+ *gen.*)
ἀποκρίνω: to separate, set apart, distinguish
ἀποκτείνω: to kill, slay
ἀποξηραίνω: to dry up
ἄρθρον, τό: a joint
ἄριστος, -η, -ον: best
ἄρκτος, ἡ: the north
ἄρκτουρος, ό: Arcturus (a star)
ἄρσῆν, -εν: male
ἀσθενής, -ές: weak, feeble, without strength
Ἀσίη, ἡ: Asia
Ἀσιηνός, -ή, -όν: Asian
ἄστρον, τό: a star
ἀταλαίπωρος, -ον: indifferent, careless, lazy
ἄτε: just as, so as, because (+ *part.*)
ἀτέραμνος, -ον: unsoftened, harsh
ἄτονος, -ον: slack, relaxed, flabby
αὐθάδης, -ες: self-willed, stubborn
αὐθις: back, back again
αὔξησις, -ιος, ἡ: growth, increase
αὔξω: to make large, increase, augment
αὔρα, ἡ: air in motion, a breeze
αὐτίκα: at once
αὐτόθι: on the spot, here, there
αὐτόνομος, -ον: living under one's own laws, independent
αὐτός, -ή, -ό: he, she, it; self, same
αὐχμηρός, -ή, -όν: dry, dusty, rough
αὐχμός, ό: drought, squalor
ἀφανίζω: to hide, conceal, remove; (*pass.*) to disappear
ἀφικνέομαι: to come to, arrive
ἄχρους, -ον: colorless, pallid, of a bad color

Glossary

B β

βάδις, -ιος, **ή**: a walking, going on foot
βάρος, -εος, **τό**: weight
βαρύς, -εία, -ύ: heavy
βασιλεύω: to be king, to rule, reign
βελτίων, -ον: better
βήξ, **βήχος**, **ό**: cough
βιάζω: to constrain, force, oppress
βίαιος, -ος, -ον: forcible, violent
βίη, **ή**: force, power, violence, strength
βίος, **ό**: life
βορέης, -ου, **ό**: the north wind
βόρειος, -η, -ον: northern
βούλομαι: to will, wish, want
βοῦς, **ό**: a cow
βράγχος, **ό**: hoarseness, sore throat
βραγχώδης, -ες: subject to hoarseness
βραχίων, -ονος, **ό**: an arm
βραχύς, -εία, -ύ: short

Γ γ

γάλα, **γάλακτος**, **τό**: milk
γάρ: for
γαστήρ, -έρος, **ή**: a belly, stomach
γαι: especially
γενναῖος, -η, -ον: noble, wellborn
γένος, -εος, **τό**: a race, family, stock
γῆ, **ή**: earth
γίγνομαι: to become, happen, occur
γιγνώσκω: to perceive, mark, learn
γλυκύς, -εία, -ύ: sweet
γνώμη, **ή**: a means of knowing, knowledge
γόνος, **ό**: seed
γυναικεῖος, -η, -ον: of women, female
γυνή, **γυναικός**, **ή**: a woman

Δ δ

δασύς, -εία, -ύ: leafy, wooded, shaggy, hairy
δέ: and, but, on the other hand (*preceded by μέν*)
δεῖ: it is necessary (+ *inf.*)
δειλία, **ή**: cowardice
δεξιός, -ή, -όν: right, on the right side
δεσπόζω: to rule

δεσπότης, -ου: a master
δεύτερος, -η, -ον: second
δέω: to need, lack
δή: now, indeed
διά: through (+ *gen.*); with, by means of (+ *acc.*)
διάβροχος, -ον: very wet, moist
δίαίτα, **ή**: a way of living, lifestyle, regimen
διαιτάω: to treat, (*pass.*) to live one's life
διαλλάσσω: to change, be different, vary
διαλύω: to loose, undo
διάρροια, **ή**: diarrhea
διαφέρω: to differ
διάφορος, -ον: different, unlike
διαχωρήσις, -ιος, **ή**: excretion
διδάσκω: to teach
δίδωμι: to give
διίημι: to discharge, let pass through
διό: wherefore, for which reason
διότι: for the reason that, since
διουρέω: to pass urine
δοκέω: to seem
δύναμαι: to be able, be possible
δύναμις, -ιος, **ή**: a power, ability, property
δύνω: to sink, set (of the sun)
δυσεντερία, **ή**: dysentery
δύσις, -ιος, **ή**: a setting (of the sun)
δυσμή, **ή**: setting

Ε ε

ἐγγίνομαι: to be born in; intervene, take place, happen
ἐγγύς: near, nigh, at hand
ἐγκέφαλος, **ό**: a brain
ἐγώ, **μου**: I, my
ἔδρη, **ή**: a seat, rump; a sitting, inactivity
ἐδωδός, -όν: eating much
ἔθνος, -εος, **τό**: a nation, people
εἶδος, -εος, **τό**: a form, shape, appearance; type, constitution
εἰκός: likely, probable
εἰμί: to be
εἵνεκα: on account of, because of (+ *gen.*)
εἷς, **μῑή**, **ἔν**: one
εἴτε...εἴτε: whether...or
ἐκ, **ἐξ**: from, out of, after (+ *gen.*)
ἐκαστος, -η, -ον: every, each

Glossary

ἐκκρίνω: to pick out, separate
ἐκπληξίς, -ιος, ῆ: a disturbance, consternation
ἐκτιτρώσκω: to bear untimely, miscarry
ἐκών: willing, of free will, readily
ἐλάσσων, -ον: smaller, less
ἐλάχιστος, -η, -ον: smallest, least
ἔλκος, -εος, τό: a wound, sore, ulcer
ἔλκω: to draw, drag, pull
ἐλώδης, -ες: marshy, fenney
ἐπίπτω: to fall upon
ἐν: in, at, among (+ *dat.*)
ἐναντίος, -η, -ον: opposite, contrary
ἐνείμι: to be in
ἐνθυμέομαι: consider well, reflect on, ponder
ἐνιοι, -αι, -α: some
ἐνταῦθα: there, then
ἐντονος, -ον: well-strung, sinewy
ἐνυδρος, -ον: holding water, well-watered
ἐξαίφνης: suddenly
ἐξοχετεύω: draw off
ἔοικε: it is like, similar to (+ *dat.*)
ἐπειδάν: whenever (+ *subj.*)
ἔπειτα: then, next
ἐπί: at (+ *gen.*); on, upon (+ *dat.*); on to, against (+ *acc.*)
ἐπιγίνομαι: to supervene, come about, befall
ἐπικαίω: to burn up, cauterize
ἐπικαταρρέω: to run down
ἐπιλάμπω: to shine upon
ἐπιμήνιος, -ον: monthly
ἐπιπίπτω: to fall upon, attack, befall
ἐπιτάμνω: to cut on the surface
ἐπιτελής, -ές: completed, accomplished
ἐπιτήδειος, -η, -ον: fit, suitable, convenient
ἐπιτολή, ῆ: a rising
ἐπιχώριος, -η, -ον: of a place, local, endemic
ἔπομαι: to follow, attend
ἐπομβρος, -ον: very rainy
ἐργάζομαι: to work, labor
ἔρχομαι: to come, go
ἔς: into, to (+ *acc.*)
ἐσθίω: to eat
ἔτι: yet, still
ἔτος, -εος, τό: a year

εὖδιος, -ον: calm, peaceful
εὕρισκω: to find
εὕροος, -ον: flowing well, open
εὐρύς, εὐρεία, εὐρύ: wide, broad
Εὐρωπαϊός, -η, -ον: European
Εὐρώπη, ῆ: Europe
εὐψυχος, -ον: courageous
εὐώδης, -ες: sweet-smelling, fragrant
ἐφύδρος, -ον: wet, moist, rainy
ἔχω: to have, be able, be (*see p. 16*)
ἔψω: to boil, cook
ἑωθινός, -ή, -όν: in the morning, early
ἕως: while, until (+ *subj.*)

Η η

ἦ: or
ἡγέομαι: to consider, think, deem
ἡήρ, ἡέρος, ό: air, fog, vapor
ἦθος, -εος, τό: character, disposition
ἡκιστος, -η, -ον: least
ἡλιος, -ου, ό: the sun
ἡμέρη, ῆ: a day
ἡμερος, -η, -ον: tame, gentle
ἦν: = **εἰ + ἄν** (Attic **ἑάν**)
ἥπερ: just as, than (after *comp.*)
ἥπιος, -η, -ον: gentle, mild, kind
ἦρ, ἦρος, τό: spring
ἡσσων, -ον: less
ἡσυχίη, ῆ: stillness, rest, quiet
ἡώς, ἡοῦς, ῆ: dawn, the east

Θ θ

θάνατος, ό: death
θεῖος, -η, -ον: divine
θεραπείη, ῆ: a service, treatment
θερινός, -ή, -όν: of summer, in summer
θερμαίνω: to warm, heat
θερμόν, τό: heat, warmth
θερμός, -ή, -όν: hot, warm
θέρρος, -εος, τό: summer
θέσις, -ιος, ῆ: a situation, placement, position
θῆλυς, θήλεια, θῆλυ: female
θηρίον, τό: a wild animal, beast
θολερός, -ή, -όν: foul, thick, turbid
θολώδης, -ες: muddy, turbid

Glossary

θυμοειδής, -ές: high-spirited, courageous
θύω: to offer, sacrifice

Ι ι

ιδιογνώμων, -ον: holding one's own opinion, independent
ιδρώ: to sweat, perspire
ιερός, -ή, -όν: sacred, divine, holy
ιητρικός, -ή, -όν: of healing, medical
ιμάτιον, τό: a cloak
ιππάζομαι: to drive horses, ride
ιππασίη, ή: riding, horse-exercise
ἵππος, ό: a horse, mare
ἴσος, -η, -ον: equal to, the same as
ισχιάς, -άδος, ή: sciatica, pain in the leg
ἰσχίον, -ου, τό: a hip
ἰσχνός, -ή, -όν: dry, withered, lean, meager
ἰσχυρός, -ή, -όν: strong, mighty, powerful
ἰσχύς, -ύος, ή: strength
ἰσχύω: to be strong, prevail
ἴσχω: to hold, keep, check

Κ κ

καθαίρω: to cleanse, clean, purge
κάθαρσις, -ιος, ή: a cleansing, evacuation
καί: and
καιρός, ό: (exact) time, season; due measure, proportion, fitness
καίω: to burn, heat, cauterize
καλέω: to call
κάμνω: to be sick, suffer from illness
καρπός, ό: fruit
κάρτα: very
καρτερός, -ή, -όν: strong, staunch, stout
κατά: down (+ acc.)
καταρρήγνυμι: to break down, burst
κατάρροος, ό: a catarrh, inflammation of the nose and throat
κατάστασις, -ιος, ή: a settling, state, condition
κατέχω: to hold fast, occupy, possess
κάτω: down, downwards
καῦμα, -ατος, τό: a burning heat
καῦσος, -εος, τό: burning heat, fever
κέδματα, -ων, τά: a kind of sore

κείμεαι: to be laid, be positioned
κέρας, κέρως, τό: a horn
κεφαλή, ή: a head
κήλη, ή: a hernia, tumor, rupture
κίνδυνος, ό: a danger, risk, hazard
κοιλίη, ή: belly, (pl.) bowels
κοινός, -ή, -όν: common, shared
κόρυζα, -ης, ή: a running of the nose, head cold
κοῦφος, -η, -ον: light, nimble
κρατέω: to be strong, rule, prevail
κρίσις, -ιος, ή: discernment, judgment
κρύσταλλος, ό: ice
κτάομαι: to get, gain, acquire
κτήνος, -εος, τό: a beast; (pl.) cattle, herd, flock
κύστις, -ιος, ή: a bladder
κύων, κυνός, ό: a dog, the Dog Star, Sirius
κωλύω: to hinder, check, prevent

Λ λ

λαγνείω: to have sexual intercourse
λαμβάνω: to take
λαμπρός, -ή, -όν: bright, clear
λέγω: to speak, say, tell
λειμακώδης, -ες: meadowy, grassy
λείπω: to leave, leave behind
λεπτός, -ή, -όν: thin, light
λευκός, -ή, -όν: light, bright, brilliant
λίην: very much, exceedingly
λιθιάω: to suffer from (kidney) stones
λιμναῖος, -η, -ον: marshy, stagnant
λίμνη, ή: a pool, lake
λόγος, ό: a work, account
λοιπός, -ή, -όν: remaining, the rest

Μ μ

μαζός, ό: a breast
μακρόβιος, -ον: long-lived
μακροκέφαλος, -ον: long-headed
μακρός, -ή, -όν: long
μαλακός, -ή, -όν: soft
μαλθακός, -ή, -όν: soft, tender
μάλιστα: most, especially
μᾶλλον: more, rather
μανθάνω: to learn, understand
μάχιμος, -ον: fit for battle, warlike

Glossary

μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα: big, great
μέγεθος, -εος, τό: greatness, stature, stature
μεθίστημι: to change
μείζις, -ιος, ή: mixing, sex
μέλας, -αινα, μέλαν: black, swarthy
μέλλω: to be about to, be going to (+ *inf.*)
μέν: on the one hand (*followed by δέ*)
μένω: to stay, remain
μέρος, -εος, τό: a part, share
μέσος, -η, -ον: middle, in the middle
μετά: with (+ *gen.*); after (+ *acc.*)
μεταβάλλω: to vary, change
μεταβολή, ή: a change
μετάδοσις, -εως, ή: a giving, sharing
μεταλλαγή, ή: change
μεταλλάσσω: to change, alter
μεταξύ: between (+ *gen.*)
μετέχω: share in, take part in
μετέωρος, -ον: high, raised from the ground
μετόπωρον, τό: autumn
μέτριος, -η, -ον: within measure, moderate
μετριότης, -ητος, ή: moderation, mildness
μή: not
μηδὲ: and not
μηκέτι: no more, no longer
μήκος, -εος, τό: length
μήτε...μήτε: neither...nor
μικρός, -ή, -όν: small, little
μορφή, ή: a form, shape
μόνος, -η, -ον: alone, only

N ν

νέφος, -εος, τό: a cloud
νέωτερος, -η, -ον: younger
νηδύς, -ύος, ή: a stomach
Νομάς, -άδος, ό: roaming about for pasture, a Nomad
νομίζω: to hold, think, believe
νόμος, ό: a usage, custom, law
νοσερός, -ή, -όν: sickly, diseased, marked by illness
νόσσημα, -ατος, τό: a sickness, disease

νοσώδης, -ες: sickly, diseased, unhealthy
νότιος, -η, -ον: wet, moist, damp; southern
νότος, ό: the south (wind)
νούσημα, -ατος, τό: an illness, disease
νοῦσος, ή: a sickness, disease
νῦν: now, at this moment

Ξ ξ

ξηραίνω: to parch, dry up
ξηρός, -ή, -όν: dry
ξηρότης, -ητος, ή: dryness

Ο ο

ό, ή, τό: the (*definite article*)
όδμή, ή: a smell, scent, odor
οίδα: to know
οικέω: to inhabit, occupy
οίκημα, -ατος, τό: a dwelling place
οίνος, ό: wine
οιον τε έστι: it is possible (+ *inf.*)
οιος τε είμι: I am able (+ *inf.*)
οιος, οίη, οιον: such as
όκοιός, -η, -ον: of what sort, what kind
όκόσος, -η, -ον: as many, as much
όκόταν: whenever (+ *subj.*)
όκου: where
όλίγος, -η, -ον: few, little, rare, small
όμβριος, -ον: rainy, of rain
όμβρος, ό: a heavy rain, shower
όμοιος, -η, -ον: like, resembling
όξύς, -εία, -ύ: sharp, keen, acute
όπισθεν: behind, at the back
όργή, ή: a temperament, disposition, nature
όρκος, ό: an oath
όρος, -εος, τό: a mountain, hill
ός, ή, ό: who, which (*relative pronoun*)
όσος, -η, -ον: how much, how great
όστις, ήτις, ό τι: whoever, whatever
όταν: whenever (+ *subj.*)
ότι: that, because
ού, ούκ, ούχ: not
ούδὲ: and not
ούρέω: to urinate
ούρητηρ, -ήρος, ό: urethra

Glossary

οὖρον, τό: urine
οὖς, ὠτός, τό: the ear
οὔτε: and not
οὕτως: this way
ὀφθαλμία, ἡ: ophthalmia, an inflammation of the eye

Π π

παγετός, ό: frost, ice
πάγκοινος, -ον: common to all, general, epidemic
παίδιον, τό: a young child
παῖς, παιδός, ό: a child
παντοδαπός, -ή, -όν: of every kind, of all sorts
πάνυ: altogether, entirely
παρά: from (+ *gen.*); beside (+ *dat.*); to (+ *acc.*)
παραπλήσιος, -η, -ον: similar
παρέχω: to furnish, provide, supply
πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν: all, every, whole
πάσχω: to experience, suffer
παύομαι: to cease
πάχος, -εος, τό: thickness
παχύς, -εία, -υ: thick
πεδῖον, τό: a plain, flat
πένης, -ητος, ό: a poor man
περί: concerning, about (+ *gen.*); about, around (+ *acc.*)
περιπλευμονία, ἡ: inflammation of the lungs, pneumonia
πηγή, ἡ: a fount, source, spring
πήγνυμι: to make solid, freeze
πιέζω: to press, squeeze, press tight
πίνω: to drink
πλαδάω: to be flaccid, be flabby
πλείστος, -η, -ον: most, largest, greatest
πλείων, -ον: more, greater
πλευρίτις, -ιδος, ἡ: pleurisy
πλήθος, -εος, τό: a great number, crowd, multitude
πλήν: except (+ *gen.*)
πλούσιος, -η, -ον: rich, wealthy, opulent
πνεῦμα, -ατος, τό: an air, wind
πνέω: to blow
πνιγηρός, -ή, -όν: choking, stifling (with heat)
πνίγος, -εος, τό: a stifling heat

ποιέω: to make, do
πολέμιος, -η, -ον: of or belonging to war, hostile
πολέμιος, ό: an enemy
πολύγονος, -ον: producing much offspring, prolific
πολυπότης, -ου, ό: a heavy drinker
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ: many, much
πολυχρόνιος, -ον: long-lasting, chronic
πονηρός, -ή, -όν: painful, grievous, injurious
ποταμός, ό: a river, stream
πότερος, -η, -ον: whether
πρεσβύτης, -ου, ό: an old man
πρίν: before (+ *inf.*)
προέρχομαι: to go forward, advance
προλέγω: to say before
πρόοιδα: to know beforehand
πρός: to (+ *dat.*)
προσέτι: in addition, besides
προσέχω: to hold to, put in
προσπίπτω: to fall upon
πρότερος, -η, -ον: before, former
πρόφασις, -ιος, ἡ: a reason, cause
πρώτος, -η, -ον: first
πυκνά: much, often
πυκνός, -ή, -όν: close, frequent, strong
πυρετός, ό: a burning heat, fever
πυρετώδης, -ες: feverish, hot
πυρρός, -ή, -όν: yellowish-red, tawny

Ρ ρ

ῥεῦμα, -ατος, τό: a flow, stream, current
ῥέω: to flow, run, stream, gush
ῥηγματίας, -ου, ό: prone to lacerations or rupture
ῥήγνυμι: to break, rupture
ῥηϊδίως: easily, readily
ῥοικός, -ή, -όν: relaxed, curved, crooked

Σ σ

σαρκώδης, -ες: fleshy
σάρξ, σαρκός, ἡ: flesh
σήπω: to make rotten, foul

Glossary

σκεπάζω: to cover, shelter
σκέπη, ἥ: a covering, shelter, protection
σκληρός, -ή, -όν: hard
σκληρότης, -ητος, ἥ: hardness
σκοπέω: to look at, view
Σκύθης, -ου, ὁ: a Scythian
Σκυθικός, -ή, -όν: Scythian
σπλήν, ὁ: a spleen
στάσιμος, -ον: standing (water)
στόμα, -ατος, τό: the mouth
στόμαχος, ὁ: a mouth, opening, stomach
στρέφω: to turn
συγγραφή, ἥ: a written contract, bond
συγκαίω: to burn up, inflame, overheat
συμβάλλω: to throw together, lend, contribute
συμμίγνυμι: to mix together
σύμπηξις, -ιος, ἥ: coagulation
συνφέρω: to bring together, contribute, be useful
συνίστημι: to set together, combine, associate, unite
συστρέφω: to form together, compress
συχνός, -ή, -όν: long, much; (pl.) many, frequent
σφόδρα: very, much
σῶμα, -ατος, τό: a body

T τ

ταλαιπωρέω: to endure hard labor
ταλαιπωρία, ἥ: hard work, hardship
ταλαίπωρον, τό: suffering, hardness
τάχιστα: very quickly
τε: and
τεκμήριον, τό: a sure sign, proof
τελευτάω: to complete, finish, accomplish
τέμνω: to cut
τεταρταίος, -η, -ον: every four days, quartan (fever)
τέχνη, ἥ: art, skill, craft
τίθημι: to set, put, place
τίκτω: to bear children, give birth
τιμάω: to honor
τις, τι: someone, something (*indefinite*)
τοιούτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: such as this
τόκος, ὁ: a bringing forth, childbirth, parturition

τοσοῦτος, -αύτη, -οὔτο: so large, so much
τότε: at that time, then
τρεις, τρία: three
τρέφω: to grow, bring up, rear; thicken or congeal
τρίβω: to rub
τυγχάνω: to hit, happen upon

Υ υ

υγίειη, ἥ: health, soundness
υγιεινός, -ή, -όν: sound, healthy
υγιερός, -ή, -όν: healthy, wholesome
υγρός, -ή, -όν: wet, moist, fluid
υγρότης, -ατος, ἥ: wetness, moisture
ύδαρής, -ές: watery, full of water
ύδατεινός, -ή, -όν: watery, moist
ὑδρωψ, -ωπος, ὁ: dropsy
ὑδωρ, ὕδατος, τό: water
ὑπερβάλλω: to overshoot, surpass, exceed
ὑπό: from under, by (+ *gen.*); under (+ *dat.*); toward (+ *acc.*)
ύψηλός, -ή, -όν: high, lofty, high-raised

Φ φ

φάρμακον, τό: a drug, medicine
Φᾶσις, -ιος, ὁ: the river Phasis
φαῦλος, -η, -ον: low, bad
φέρομαι: to bear for oneself, to win
φέρω: to bear
φημί: to declare, say
φθίσις, -ιος, ἥ: a wasting away, consumption
φλέγμα, -ατος, τό: inflammation, phlegm (one of the four humors)
φλεγματίας, -ου, ὁ: phlegmatic
φλεγματώδης, -ες: inflammatory, full of phlegm
φλέψ, φλεβός, ἥ: a vein
φράζω: to point out, show, indicate
φυλάσσω: to keep watch, guard
φύσις, -ιος, ἥ: nature
φύω: to bring forth, produce, put forth

Χ χ

Glossary

χαλεπός, -ή, -όν: hard to bear, painful, difficult
χειμερινός, -ή, -όν: of winter, in winter
χειμών, -ώνος, δ: winter
χείρ, χειρός, ή: a hand
χιών, -όνος, ή: snow
χολώδης, -ες: bilious
χρέομαι: to use, enjoy (+ *dat.*)
χρή: it is necessary
χρήζω: to need, lack
χρήμα, -ατος: a thing that one uses
χρηστός, -ή, -όν: useful, good, pleasant
χώρη, ή: a space, place, region
χωρίον, τό: a place district
χωρίς: separately, apart
ψιλός, -ή, -όν: bare, empty, naked
ψυχή, ή: soul, spirit, mind
ψυχος, -εος, τό: cold
ψυχρός, -ή, -όν: cold, chill
ψυχρότης, -ητος, ή: coldness, cold

Ω ω

ὥδε: so, thus, in this way
ὤμος, δ: a shoulder
ὥραιος, -η, -ον: timely, seasonable
ὥρη, ή: a period, season
ὥς: *adv.* as, so, how; *conj.* that, in order that, since; *prep.* to (+ *acc.*); as if, as (+ *part.*); as ____ as possible (+ *superlative*)
ὥστε: so that

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

NOTES:

The aim of this book is to make Hippocrates' *On Airs, Waters and Places* and the *Hippocratic Oath* accessible to intermediate students of Ancient Greek. The running vocabulary and commentary are meant to provide everything necessary to read each page. Hippocrates' *On Airs, Waters and Places* is a great text for intermediate readers. The simple sentence structure makes it easy to read, while its subject matter, the impact of climate on disease and character, is interesting for a number of reasons. The presentation falls roughly into two halves, the first detailing various environmental factors that contribute to specific diseases, the second more ethnographic in its account of the differences between Asians and Europeans as a function of their environment and customs.

Also available in this series:

Lucian's *A True Story*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Lucian's *The Ass*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Lucian's *On the Syrian Goddess*: An Intermediate Greek Reader

Plutarch's *Dialogue on Love*: An Intermediate Greek Reader